

Pro4000 Series User's Guide

January 2012 www.lexmark.com

Machine type(s):

4447

Model(s):

Pro4000: 0n0, 0nE; Pro4000c: 000

Contents 2

Contents

Safety information	6
About your printer	7
Thank you for choosing this printer!	7
Minimizing your printer's environmental impact	7
Finding information about the printer	8
Understanding the parts of the printer	10
Selecting a location for the printer	12
Ordering and replacing supplies	13
Ordering ink cartridges	13
Using genuine Lexmark ink cartridges	13
Replacing ink cartridges	14
Ordering paper and other supplies	15
Recycling Lexmark products	15
Using the printer control panel buttons and menus	16
Using the printer control panel	16
Changing the Sleep timeout	18
Saving paper and energy	18
Restoring factory default settings	18
Using shortcuts	19
What are shortcuts?	19
Getting started	20
Using the printer software	22
Minimum system requirements	22
Using the Windows printer software	22
Using the Macintosh printer software	24
Finding and installing optional software	25
Updating the printer software	25
Downloading PCL and PS drivers (Windows only)	26
Reinstalling the printer software	26

Loading paper and original documents	28
Loading the paper tray	28
Loading various paper types	30
Saving paper settings	33
Loading original documents on the scanner glass	33
Loading original documents into the ADF	34
Using different paper sizes and types	35
Printing	39
Tips for printing	39
Printing basic documents	39
Printing specialty documents	42
Working with photos	45
Printing on both sides of the paper (duplexing)	48
Managing print jobs	51
Printing from a mobile device	54
Copying	56
Tips for copying	56
Making copies	56
Copying an ID card	57
Enlarging or reducing images	57
Adjusting copy quality	58
Making a copy lighter or darker	58
Collating copies using the printer control panel	58
Placing separator sheets between copies	59
Copying multiple pages on one sheet	59
Placing an overlay message on each page	59
Removing the background of a copy	60
Making a duplex copy	60
Canceling copy jobs	61
Scanning	62
Tips for scanning	62
Scanning to a local computer	62
Scanning to a network computer	63

Scanning to a flash drive or memory card		
Scanning photos for editing		
Scanning documents for editing	65	
Scanning directly to e-mail using the printer software	66	
Scanning to a PDF	66	
Scanning FAQ	67	
Canceling scan jobs	68	
E-mailing	69	
Setting up the printer to e-mail	69	
Creating an e-mail contact list	70	
Sending e-mail	71	
Canceling an e-mail	71	
Faxing	72	
Setting up the printer to fax	72	
Configuring the fax settings	83	
Creating a contact list	85	
Sending faxes	87	
Receiving faxes	88	
Faxing FAQ	90	
Networking	96	
Installing the printer on a wireless network	96	
Advanced wireless setup	102	
Installing the printer on an Ethernet network	113	
Networking FAQ	114	
Maintaining the printer	127	
Maintaining ink cartridges	127	
Cleaning the exterior of the printer		
Cleaning the scanner glass	129	
Moving the printer to another location	129	
Troubleshooting	130	
Before you troubleshoot		
If Troubleshooting does not solve your problem		
Setup troubleshooting		

Understanding printer messages	135
Clearing paper jams	140
Print troubleshooting	143
Copy and scan troubleshooting	146
E-mail troubleshooting	148
Fax troubleshooting	148
Memory card troubleshooting	154
Network troubleshooting	154
Notices	165
Product information	165
Edition notice	165
Power consumption	168
Index	182

Safety information 6

Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

Use only the power supply and power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacements.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce the risk of fire, use only 26 AWG or larger (e.g., 24 AWG) UL Listed or CSA Certified Telecommunication Line Cord.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS: When using your telephone equipment, basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock and injury to persons, including the following:

- Do not use this product near water for example, near a bathtub, washbowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

About your printer

Thank you for choosing this printer!

We've worked hard to make sure it will meet your needs.

To start using your new printer right away, use the setup materials that came with the printer, and then skim the *User's Guide* to learn how to perform basic tasks. To get the most out of your printer, read the *User's Guide* carefully, and make sure you check the latest updates on our Web site.

We're committed to delivering performance and value with our printers, and we want to make sure you're satisfied. If you do encounter any problems along the way, one of our knowledgeable support representatives will be delighted to help you get back on track fast. And if you find something we could do better, please let us know. After all, you are the reason we do what we do, and your suggestions help us do it better.

Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

We are committed to protecting the environment and are continually improving our printers to reduce their environmental impact. By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's environmental impact even further.

Conserving energy

- **Select the lowest Sleep timeout.** The Sleep feature puts the printer in a minimum-power standby mode after the printer has been idle for a set amount of time (the Sleep timeout).
- Reduce the screen brightness. Dim the printer display to lower the power consumption of your printer.
- **Share your printer.** Wireless/network printers allow you to share a single printer among multiple computers, thus conserving energy and other resources.

Conserving paper

- **Print more than one page image on one side of the paper.** The Pages per Sheet feature allows you to print multiple pages on one sheet. You can print up to 16 page images on one side of a sheet of paper.
- **Print on both sides of the paper.** Two-sided printing (duplexing) lets you print on both sides of the paper manually or automatically (depending on your printer model).
- **Preview print jobs before printing.** Use the preview features found in Toolbars, the Print or Print Preview dialog, or the printer display (depending on your printer model).
- Use recycled paper.
- Reduce the margins of documents to be printed.
- **Scan and save.** To avoid printing multiple copies, you can scan documents or photos and save them to a computer program, application, or flash drive for presentation (depending on your printer model).

Conserving ink

• Use Quick Print or Draft Mode. These modes can be used to print documents using less ink than normal and are recommended for printing documents that are mostly text.

- Use font types and font settings that require less ink. Most programs or applications let you adjust the darkness of the colors.
- Use high-yield cartridges. Inks in high-yield cartridges allow you to print more pages.
- **Preview print jobs before printing.** Use the preview features found in Toolbars, the Print Preview dialog, or the printer display (depending on your printer model).

Recycling

- Return ink cartridges for reuse or recycling through the Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program. To return an ink cartridge, go to www.lexmark.com/recycle. Follow the instructions to request a postage-paid bag.
- Recycle the product packaging.
- Recycle your old printer instead of throwing it away.
- Recycle paper from discarded print jobs.
- Use recycled paper.

To read the Lexmark Environmental Sustainability Report, see www.lexmark.com/environment.

Note: Your printer may not come with some of these programs or some of the functions of these programs, depending on the features of the printer that you purchased.

Finding information about the printer

Publications

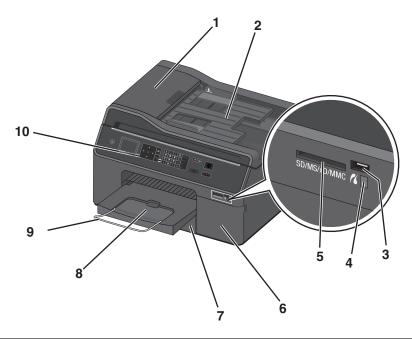
What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: Connecting the printer Installing the printer software	Setup documentation The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: • Selecting and storing paper and specialty media • Loading paper	User's Guide The User's Guide is available on the installation software CD.
 Performing printing, copying, scanning, and faxing tasks, depending on your printer model Configuring printer settings Viewing and printing documents and photos Setting up and using printer software Setting up and configuring the printer on a network, depending on your printer model Caring for and maintaining the printer Troubleshooting and solving problems 	For updates, check our Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.
Creating and customizing printer solutions, depending on your printer model	SmartSolutions User's Guide and Help Go to http://smartsolutions.lexmark.com. Click HELP to view basic SmartSolutions information.
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help Open a printer software program or application, and then click Help. Click to view context-sensitive information. Notes: • The Help installs automatically with the printer software. • The printer software is located in the printer program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.
The latest supplemental information, updates, and online technical support: Troubleshooting hints and tips Frequently asked questions Documentation	Lexmark Support Web site— http://support.lexmark.com Note: Select your region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site. Record the following information (located on the store receipt and the back of the printer), and have it ready
 Driver downloads Live chat support E-mail support 	when you contact support so that they may serve you faster: • MAC address number • Serial number • Date purchased
	Store where purchased

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Telephone support	In the US, call us at: 1-800-395-4039 Monday–Friday (8:00 AM–11:00 PM ET), Saturday
	and Sunday (11:00 AM–8:00 PM ET) Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your region or country can be found on the Support Web site (http://support.lexmark.com) or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.
Warranty information	 In the US—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at http://support.lexmark.com.
	 In other countries or regions—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.

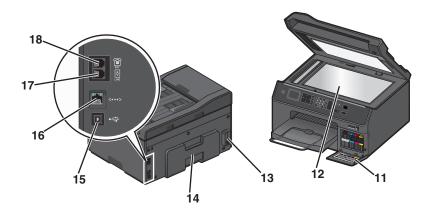
Note: Your printer may not come with some of these programs or some of the functions of these programs, depending on the features of the printer that you purchased.

Understanding the parts of the printer



	Use the	То
1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	 Scan, copy, or fax multiple-page documents. Access ADF paper jams.

	Use the	То	
2	ADF input tray	Load original documents into the ADF.	
		Notes:	
		 Do not load postcards, photos, small items, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass. 	
		 After scanning, copying, or faxing, you can lift the right end of the input tray to retrieve the original documents easily. 	
3	PictBridge and USB port	Connect a PictBridge-enabled digital camera or a flash drive to the printer.	
4	Card reader light	Check the card reader status. The light comes on when a memory card is inserted and blinks when a memory card is being accessed.	
5	Memory card slot	Insert a memory card.	
6	Ink cartridge access door	Install, remove, or replace ink cartridges.	
7	Paper tray	Load paper.	
8	Exit bin	Hold paper as it exits.	
		Note: For the printer to be ready for any print job, make sure to fully extend the exit bin and to flip out the bin extender.	
9	Bin extender	Catch the paper as it exits.	
		Note: For the printer to be ready for any print job, make sure to fully extend the exit bin and to flip out the bin extender.	
10	Printer control panel	Operate the printer.	



	Use the	То
11	Customer support label	Identify the model number of the printer, the customer support hot line, and the ink cartridge information.
12	Scanner glass	Scan, copy, or fax photos and documents.
13	Power supply with port	Connect the printer to the power cord.
14	Duplex unit	Print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
		Access paper jams.

	Use the	То
15	USB port	Connect the printer to a computer using a USB cable. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB port except when plugging in or removing a USB cable or installation cable. Note: Remove the sticker to access the port.
16	Ethernet port	Connect your printer to a computer, a local network, an external DSL, or a cable modem.
17	LINE port	Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the phone line to send and receive faxes.
18	EXT port	Connect additional devices (telephone or answering machine) to the printer and the telephone line. Use this port if you do not have a dedicated fax line for the printer and if this connection method is supported in your country or region. Note: Remove the plug to access the port.

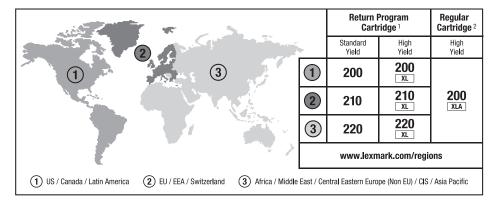
Selecting a location for the printer

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays (including optional trays), covers, and doors, depending on the features of your printer. It is important to:

- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
 - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators
 - Free from direct sunlight, humidity extremes, or temperature fluctuations
 - Clean, dry, and free of dust

Ordering and replacing supplies

Ordering ink cartridges



¹ Licensed for a single use only. After use, return this cartridge to Lexmark for remanufacturing, refilling, or recycling.

Notes:

- To get more ink, order high-yield ink cartridges.
- Depending on your country or region, you may get the ink cartridges individually or in packs.
- You can order a mix of standard ink cartridges and high-yield ink cartridges, depending on your needs.
- For page yield information, visit www.lexmark.com/yields.
- The cartridges used for printing documents can also be used for printing photos.
- For best results, use only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges.

Using genuine Lexmark ink cartridges

Lexmark printers, ink cartridges, and photo paper are designed to perform together for superior print quality, and our inks are formulated to work with your printer and help extend the life of your product. We recommend that you use only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges.

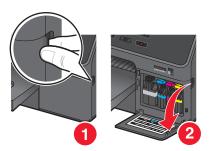
Lexmark's warranty does not cover damage caused by non-Lexmark ink or ink cartridges.

² Available only on the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.

Replacing ink cartridges

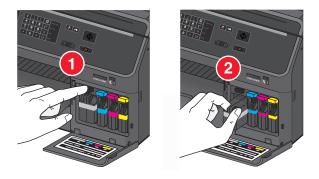
Make sure you have a new ink cartridge or cartridges before you begin. You must install new cartridges immediately after removing the old ones, or the ink remaining in the printhead nozzles may dry out.

- **1** Turn on your printer.
- 2 Open the ink cartridge access door.

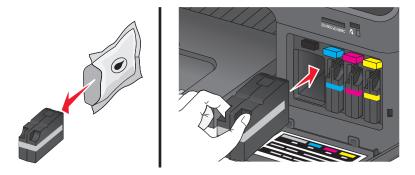


Warning—Potential Damage: Do not extend the ink cartridge access door beyond 90 degrees when opening to prevent it from breaking.

3 Press the release tab, and then remove the used ink cartridge or cartridges.



4 Install each ink cartridge.



Note: Install the new ink cartridges immediately after removing them from the packaging to avoid exposing the ink to air.

5 Close the ink cartridge access door.

Notes:

- If Align Printer appears on the printer display, then touch Continue or press ok, depending on your printer model.
- Do not remove the alignment page until printing is finished.

Ordering paper and other supplies

To order supplies or to locate a dealer near you, visit our Web site at www.lexmark.com.

Item	Part Number
USB cable	1021294
For more information, go to www.lexmark.com.	

Paper	Paper size
Lexmark Photo Paper	• Letter
	• A4
	• 4 x 6 in.
	• [

Notes:

- Availability may vary by country or region.
- For best results when printing photos or other high-quality images, use Lexmark Photo Paper.
- For more information, go to www.lexmark.com.

Recycling Lexmark products

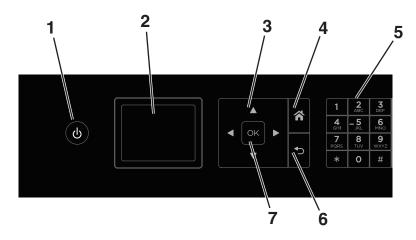
To return Lexmark products for recycling:

- 1 Visit our Web site at www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

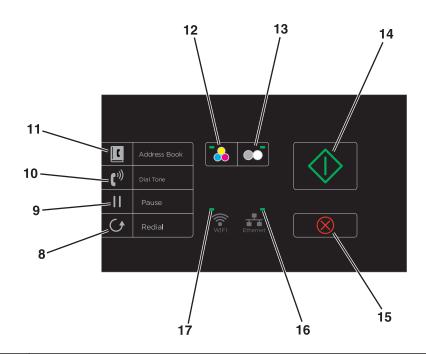
Note: Printer supplies and hardware not listed in a Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

Using the printer control panel buttons and menus

Using the printer control panel



	Use	То		
1	Power	Turn the printer on and off.		
	(1)	Switch to Sleep mode.		
		Note: When the printer is on, press \textcircled{b} to switch to Sleep mode. Press and hold \textcircled{b} for three seconds to turn off the printer.		
2	Display	View:		
	Note: The display is	Printer status		
	turned off in Sleep	Messages		
	mode.	Menus		
3	Arrow buttons	Navigate through menu items that appear on the display.		
4	Home	Return to the home screen.		
5	Keypad	In Copy mode or Photo mode:		
Enter the number of copies or prints you want		Enter the number of copies or prints you want to make.		
In Fax mode:		In Fax mode:		
• En		Enter fax numbers.		
Operate an automated answer		Operate an automated answering system.		
Select letters when creating a Speed Dial list.		Select letters when creating a Speed Dial list.		
		Type numbers to enter or edit the date and time shown on the display.		
6	Back	Return to the previous screen.		
Exit from one menu level to a higher one.		Exit from one menu level to a higher one.		
7	Select	Select menu options.		
• Save settings.		Save settings.		



	Use	То	
8	Redial	isplay the last number dialed. Press the left or right arrow button to view the last five numbers ialed.	
9	Pause	Insert a three-second pause in a fax number to wait for an outside line or get through an automated answering system. Enter a pause only when you have already begun entering the number.	
10	Dial Tone	Dial the telephone number manually using the keypad before sending the fax.	
11	Address Book	Access fax numbers from a saved list of numbers.	
12	Color	Switch to color mode.	
13	Black	Switch to black-and-white mode.	
14	Start	Start a job, depending on which mode is selected.	
15	Cancel 🚫	 Cancel a print, copy, scan, or fax job in progress. Clear current settings or error messages, and return to previous settings. 	
16	Ethernet indicator	Check the Ethernet connection of your printer.	
17	Wi-Fi indicator	Check the wireless connection of your printer. Note: This feature may be available only in select printer models.	

Changing the Sleep timeout

The Sleep timeout is the time it takes for the printer to switch to Sleep mode when the printer is left idle. The Sleep feature optimizes energy efficiency by reducing the printer power consumption. To save the most energy, select the lowest Sleep timeout.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > ○K > Device Setup > ○K > Sleep > ○K
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to select or use the keypad to enter the value of the Sleep timeout, and then press ok.

Saving paper and energy

To significantly cut paper usage and reduce paper waste, activate duplex printing:

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - A > Setup > OK > Print Mode Setup > OK > 2-Sided Copy, Standalone > OK
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to On, and then press ok.

To optimize energy efficiency, reduce the Sleep timeout and Screen Brightness:

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > OK > Device Setup > OK > Sleep > OK
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to select or use the keypad to enter the Sleep timeout value, and then press ok.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → Setup > OK > Device Setup > OK > Screen Brightness > OK
- 4 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to Dim, and then press ok.

Note: If you select **2-Sided Copy, Standalone**, then the printer prints on both sides of the paper (duplex) for copy and fax jobs, and for printing in Windows and Macintosh, depending on your printer model.

Restoring factory default settings

Resetting to factory default settings will delete all the printer settings you have previously selected.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > > Restore Factory Defaults > ○
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to Restore All Printer Settings, and then press ox.
- **3** Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **Yes**, and then press ok. The printer restarts automatically after resetting to factory default settings.
- **4** When prompted to set the initial settings of your printer, make your selections using the printer control panel buttons.

Initial Setup Complete appears on the display.

Using shortcuts 19

Using shortcuts

What are shortcuts?

A shortcut is a way to quickly accomplish printing, copying, scanning, e-mailing, or faxing tasks with the printer. You can configure and save a set of frequently used printer settings available for a given task and then assign a shortcut name and shortcut number to it. When you want to perform a task with those settings, you can simply select the shortcut number on the printer instead of going through the usual process of adjusting the settings and options.

Configure the shortcut settings for a task in the printer Web page:

Choose	То	
Сору	Copy a document or photo.	
Есо-Сору	Copy a document or photo using two-sided or draft setting.	
ID Card Copy	Copy both sides of an ID card onto a single page.	
Scan to Fax	Scan a document or photo and send it through fax.	
Scan to E-mail	Scan a document or photo and send it through e-mail.	
	Note: Make sure the printer is connected to the network and the Internet through an Ethernet or wireless connection.	
Scan to Computer	Scan a document or photo and send it to your computer.	
	Notes:	
	Make sure the printer driver is installed with a network printer connection.	
	 Make sure the printer is connected to the computer, either locally (USB) through the same Ethernet or wireless network. 	
Scan to Network	Scan a document or photo and save it to a network folder.	
	Note: Make sure the printer is connected to the Internet through an Etherne or wireless connection.	
Scan to Memory Device	Scan a document or photo and save it to a memory card or flash drive (depending on your printer model).	
Print a File	Print a document from your computer.	
	Note: Make sure the printer is connected to the computer through the same Ethernet or wireless network.	

Example:

A lawyer who uses his printer to send e-mails to clients normally navigates through the printer control panel to select the feature and its available options. Instead of doing that, he can configure the printer settings (such as the message title and recipient) from the printer Web page, and then assign a shortcut number to the task. When he enters the shortcut number on the printer control panel, the printer automatically sends the documents according to the selected settings. If he wants to send another copy of the message, he simply enters the shortcut number again.

Using shortcuts 20

Getting started

During installation, a link will be provided for you to create shortcuts. If you were not able to create your shortcuts during installation, then you may create the shortcuts through your printer software.

Launching the shortcuts page using the printer software

Before you begin, make sure:

- Your printer and computer are each connected to the network through an Ethernet or wireless connection.
- Your printer is turned on.

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Settings > Configure Shortcuts

For Macintosh users

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder > Shortcuts

2 Select your printer from the list, and then click Launch.

Creating a shortcut

1 Launch the shortcuts page, and then navigate to:

Add New Shortcut > select a task

2 Assign a shortcut number and shortcut name, and then specify the settings.

Notes:

- You can assign shortcut numbers from 1 to 999.
- If you configured the shortcut to show the settings before running, then the settings will appear on the printer display. Adjust the settings if necessary.
- 3 Click Add.

Modifying or deleting a shortcut

- **1** Launch the shortcuts page, and then select a shortcut.
- **2** Do either of the following:
 - Make the necessary changes, and then click **Save Changes**.
 - Click Delete.

Using shortcuts 21

Using shortcuts on the printer

Make sure you have created a shortcut.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

Using the printer software

Minimum system requirements

The printer software requires up to 500MB of free disk space.

Supported operating systems

- Microsoft Windows 7 (SP 1)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (R2)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (SP2)
- Microsoft Windows Vista (SP2)
- Microsoft Windows XP (SP3)
- Macintosh Intel OS X version 10.7.0 or later
- Macintosh Intel OS X version 10.6.0 or later
- Macintosh Intel OS X version 10.5.0 or later
- Macintosh Intel OS X version 10.4.4 or later
- Macintosh PowerPC OS X version 10.5.0 or later
- Macintosh PowerPC OS X version 10.4.0 or later
- Ubuntu Linux 10.10, 10.04, 9.10, and 9.04*
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux WS 6, WS 5, and WS 4*
- Red Flag Linux Desktop 6.0*
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 and 10*
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 and 10*
- Linux openSUSE 11.4, 11.3, and 11.2*
- Linpus Linux Desktop 9.6*
- Fedora 14*
- Debian GNU/Linux 6.0 and 5.0*

Note: Information on additional operating system versions that are compatible with the printer may be available on our Web site.

Using the Windows printer software

Software installed during printer installation

When you set up the printer using the installation software CD, all the necessary software was installed. You may have chosen to install some additional programs. The following table provides an overview of various software programs and what they can help you do.

If you did not install these additional programs during initial installation, then reinsert the installation software CD, run the installation software, and then click **Advanced Options** > **Install Additional Software**.

^{*} The printer driver for this operating system is available only at http://support.lexmark.com.

Printer software

Use the	То		
Lexmark [™] Printer Home	Launch applications or programs.		
(referred to as Printer Home)	Scan or e-mail a photo or document.		
	Edit scanned documents.		
	Scan documents to PDF.		
	Adjust settings for the printer.		
	Order supplies.		
	Maintain ink cartridges.		
	Register the printer.		
	Contact technical support.		
	Access the User's Guide.		
Lexmark Phone Book	Manage your fax contacts.		
(referred to as Phone Book)			
Abbyy Sprint OCR	Scan a document and produce text that you can edit with a word-processing program.		
Lexmark Wireless Setup Utility	Set up the wireless printer on a wireless network.		
(referred to as Wireless Setup Utility)	Change the wireless settings of the printer.		
	Note: This program is installed automatically with the printer software if the printer has wireless capability.		
Lexmark Tools for Office	Access your favorite settings in Microsoft Office 2007.		
(referred to as Tools for Office)			
Printer Setup Utility	Configure the fax and e-mail settings of your printer.		
Status Messenger	Learn more about the printing problems encountered.		
Status Monitor Center	Check the supplies status of your printer.		
	Order supplies online.		
Product Update	Receive automatic notifications of updates to your printer software when new updates are available.		
Printing Preferences	When you click File > Print > Properties with a document open, a Printing Preferences dialog appears. The dialog lets you select options for the print job, such as the following:		
	Select the number of copies to print.		
	Print two-sided copies.		
	Select the paper type.		
	Add a watermark.		
	Enhance images.		
	Save settings.		
	Note: Printing Preferences is installed automatically with the printer software.		

Note: Your printer may not come with some of these programs or some of the functions of these programs, depending on the features of the printer that you purchased.

Using the Macintosh printer software

Launching the Print dialog

Use the Print dialog to adjust the print settings and schedule print jobs.

With a document or photo open, choose File > Print.

Launching an application

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder

2 Double-click the application that you want to use.

Use the	То	
Printer Settings	Customize settings for fax jobs.	
	Create and edit the Contacts list.	
	Configure e-mail connectivity settings.	
	Configure the language, country, date, and time.	
Shortcuts	Speed up usual tasks with your printer.	
Wireless Setup	Set up the printer on a wireless network.	
Assistant	Note: This application is automatically installed with the printer software if the printer has wireless capability.	
Uninstaller	Remove the printer software from your computer.	

Notes:

- Your printer may not come with these applications, depending on the features of the printer that you purchased or the installation type (standard or custom) chosen when you installed the printer.
- To take advantage of the full features of your printer, select the custom install option during installation, and then select all packages listed.

Accessing Web links

Web links are links to predefined Web pages that are saved in the printer folder.

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder > Web Links

2 Double-click the Web link that you want to visit.

Use	То
Customer Support	Contact customer support.
Lexmark Software Updates	Download and install the latest printer software.
Lexmark Online	Visit the Lexmark Web site.
Order Supplies Online	Order ink or supplies.

Use	То
Printer Registration	Register your printer.
Visit Lexmark SmartSolutions	Visit the SmartSolutions Web site.
	Choose your custom solutions.

Note: Your printer may not come with these Web links, depending on the features of the printer that you purchased.

Finding and installing optional software

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:
 - **Printer Home** > select your printer > **Support** > **Online support**
- **4** From the Web site, select your printer and then download the driver.
- 5 Install additional or optional software.

For Macintosh users

- **1** From the Finder, navigate to:
 - **Applications** > select your printer folder > **Web Links** > **Lexmark Software Updates**
- **2** From the Web site, select your printer and then download the driver.
- **3** Install additional or optional software.

Updating the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- **3** Select your printer, and then click **Product Update**.
- **4** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:
 - Applications > select your printer folder > Web Links > Lexmark Software Updates
- 2 From the Web site, select your printer and then download the driver.

Downloading PCL and PS drivers (Windows only)

Universal Print Drivers (PCL 5 emulation, PCL XL emulation, and PS emulation) can be downloaded from our Web site. You need to search for your printer model to view compatible drivers.

Reinstalling the printer software

When you set up the printer using the installation software CD, all the necessary software was installed. If you encountered problems while installing, or if your printer does not appear in the printers folder or as a printer option when you send a print job, then try uninstalling and reinstalling the printer.

Uninstalling the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Click the uninstaller.
- **4** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- **5** Once the uninstall process is complete, restart your computer.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Close all open applications.
- **2** From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder

- 3 Double-click Uninstaller.
- **4** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Installing the printer software

Note: If you installed the printer software on this computer before but need to reinstall the software, then uninstall the current software first.

For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- **2** Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog screen does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type D:\setup.exe, where D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.

3 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

Note: To take advantage of the full features of your printer, select the custom install option, and then select all packages listed.

- 1 Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

 If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.
- **3** Double-click the software installer package, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Using the Internet

- 1 Go to the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.
- 2 Navigate to:
 - **SUPPORT & DOWNLOADS** > select your printer > select your operating system
- **3** Download the driver, and then install the printer software.

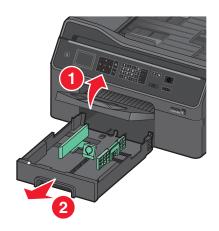
Note: Updated printer software may be available at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Loading paper and original documents

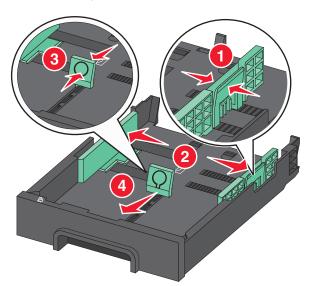
Loading the paper tray

Make sure:

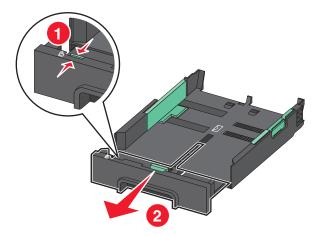
- You use paper designed for inkjet printers.
- The paper is not used or damaged.
- You follow the instructions that came with the specialty media.
- The paper does not buckle when you adjust the paper guides.
- 1 Lift the exit bin, and then pull the tray completely out of the printer.



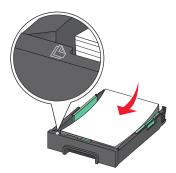
2 Move the paper guides to the sides of the tray.



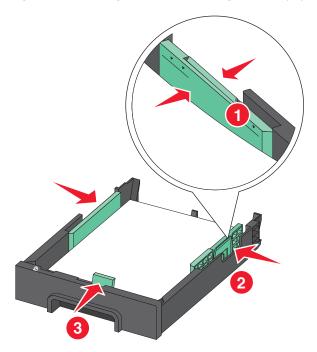
3 If you are loading legal-size paper, then squeeze the tab and pull to extend the tray.



4 Load the paper with the printable side facedown.



5 Adjust the paper guides to rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the paper.



Note: Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams.

6 Insert the tray.



Note: If you extended the tray to accommodate legal-size paper, then the tray sticks out from the front of the printer when inserted.

7 Fully extend the exit bin, and then flip out the bin extender to catch the paper as it exits.



Loading various paper types

Note: Different paper types and sizes should *not* be loaded together in the paper tray.

Load up to	Make sure	
300 sheets of plain paper	The paper is designed for use with inkjet printers.	
	 The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the paper. 	

Load up to	Make sure
100 sheets of coated paper 25 sheets of photo paper 25 sheets of glossy paper	 The paper is loaded with the glossy or printable side facedown. If you are not sure which side is printable, then see the instructions that came with the paper. The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the paper. You do <i>not</i> touch or scratch the glossy surface of the unprinted paper to
	prevent smudges or marks that may affect the quality of your prints.
	Notes:
	 For best results, allow photos to dry at least 24 hours before stacking, displaying, or storing.
	For best results, load more photo paper than needed, but do not exceed the maximum number of sheets for your paper type.
10 envelopes	
	The envelopes are designed for use with inkjet printers.
	• The envelopes are loaded with the printable side facedown and the flap to the left as shown.
	 You load the envelopes in the center of the tray as indicated by the icon. Load them all the way to the back of the tray.
	You print the envelopes in landscape orientation.
	 The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the envelopes.
	 You select the correct envelope size. Set the left and right margins so that the envelope text will be correctly positioned on the envelope.
	Warning—Potential Damage: Do not use envelopes that have metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars.
	Notes:
	 Do not load envelopes with holes, perforations, cutouts, or deep embossing.
	Do not use envelopes that have exposed flap adhesive.

Load up to	Make sure
25 sheets of labels	 You use full label sheets. Partial sheets (with areas exposed by missing labels) may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a paper jam.
	You load A4- or letter-size label sheets.
	The labels are loaded with the printable side facedown.
	The top of the labels feeds into the printer first.
	 The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the label sheets.
50 transparencies	The transparencies are loaded with the rough side facedown.
	You load A4- or letter-size transparencies.
	 You remove any paper backing sheets from the transparencies before loading.
	• If the transparencies have a removable strip, then each strip faces down.
	 The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the transparencies.
	Note: Transparencies require more drying time. Remove each transparency as it exits, and allow it to dry to avoid ink smudging.
10 iron-on transfers	 You follow the loading instructions that came with the iron-on transfers. The transfers are loaded with the printable side facedown.
	The paper guides rest against the edges of the transfers.
	Note: For best results, load transfers one at a time.
25 index cards, photo papers, or postcards	• The thickness does not exceed 0.025 inches (0.635 mm).
	Photo paper is loaded with the printable side facedown.
	You load the photo paper in the center of the tray.
	 The paper guides rest against the left, right, and bottom edges of the paper.
	Note: For best results, allow photos to dry at least 24 hours before stacking, displaying, or storing.

Saving paper settings

You can adjust the settings for your print and copy jobs to match the paper size and type you have loaded in the printer.

- **1** From the printer control panel, press $^{\land}$.
- **2** Adjust the settings as needed:
 - If you want to set the paper size, then navigate to:

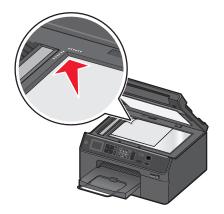
```
Setup > OK > Paper Setup > OK > Paper Size > OK > select the default paper size > OK
```

• If you want to set the paper type, then navigate to:

Setup > OK > Paper Setup > OK > Paper Type > OK > select the default paper type > OK

Loading original documents on the scanner glass

- **1** Open the scanner cover and place the document facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** Close the scanner cover.

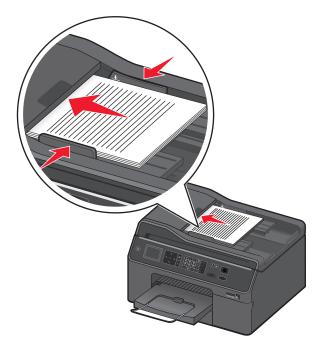




Loading original documents into the ADF

Note: Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper guide. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams.

1 Adjust the paper guides on the ADF input tray to the width of the original document.



2 Load the original document faceup and top edge first into the ADF until you hear a *beep* or a sound from the ADF. You can load the following paper sizes:

- Letter
- Legal
- 8 x 10 in.
- A4
- B5
- A5
- 20 x 25 cm
- Executive
- Oficio (Mexico)
- Folio

Note: Make sure that the paper size loaded matches the paper size setting in the scan options menu.

Using different paper sizes and types

For best results, choose a recommended paper for a print job.

Recommended paper brands

For e-mails, received faxes, internal documents, and similar print jobs:

Size	Recommended paper	Weight	Set paper type to
Letter	PrintWorks 30% Recycled Multipurpose Paper #00011	20 lb	Plain
A4	UPM Future Multitech	80 g/m ²	Plain

For colorful and high-coverage documents:

Size	Recommended paper	Weight	Set paper type to	
Letter	Georgia Pacific Everyday Ink Jet and Laser Paper #214305	24 lb	ColorLok Certified Plain	
	Hammermill Ultra Premium Laser Print #16600-0	24 lb	Premium Plain	
	Note: For best results, set Page Dry Time to Extended .			
	Georgia Pacific Premium Multipurpose Paper #214306	20 lb	Colorlok Certified Plain	
A4	M-Real Data Copy Colour Printing Note: For best results, set Page Dry Time to Extended.	90 g/m ²	Premium Plain	
	SOPORCEL Navigator Universal Multifunctional	80 g/m ²	Premium Plain	

For résumés, letterhead documents, and similar print jobs:

Size	Recommended paper	Weight	Set paper type to
Letter	Wausau Professional Series Royal Linen paper, 30% recycled, #WAU74089	24 lb	Premium Plain

For photos, brochures, business cards, iron-on transfers, window clings, and other specialty print jobs:

Paper and specialty media	One-sided or two-sided printing	Recommended paper	Set paper type to
Photo	One-sided	Lexmark PerfectFinish [™] Photo	Lexmark PerfectFinish Photo
		Lexmark Photo	Lexmark Photo
Photo book pages		Red River Premium Gloss DUO, double-sided glossy photo inkjet paper	Glossy Photo
		Note: To print on both sides of this photo paper, allow the printed side to dry for 24 hours before printing on the other side.	
Matte brochure	Two-sided	Lexmark Matte Brochure Paper	Inkjet Matte Brochure
Glossy brochure		 Red River Zeppelin SemiGloss Paperworks Inkjet 2-side Semi-Gloss P/C:PPPJJ48 and Manufacturer #:JANUSSM8511 	Inkjet Glossy Brochure
Avery specialty		 Avery Half-Fold Greeting Cards for Inkjet Printers #3265 Avery Tri-Fold Brochures for Inkjet Printers #8324 	Business Card
		 Avery Two-Side Printable Clean Edge Business cards for Inkjet Printers #8871 	
Iron-on transfer	One-sided	Avery T-shirt Transfers for Inkjet Printers #3271	Iron-On Transfer
Clear window cling		Micro Format, Inc., Super Color Cling #SP5676	Transparency

Setting the paper size and type

You can adjust the settings for your print and copy jobs to match the paper size and type you have loaded in the printer.

Using the printer control panel

- **1** From the printer control panel, press $^{\land}$.
- 2 Adjust the settings as needed:
 - If you want to set the paper size, then navigate to:
 - Setup > OK > Paper Setup > OK > Paper Size > OK > select the paper size you want > OK
 - If you want to set the paper type, then navigate to:
 - Setup > OK > Paper setup > OK > Paper Type > OK > select the paper type you want > OK

Using the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Click the Paper/Finishing tab, and then select the size or type of paper to use, and the paper source or tray.
- 4 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 6 From the print options pop-up menu, choose Quality & Media.
- 7 From the Paper Type pop-up menu, choose the type of paper to use.

Setting the page dry time

Using the control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - Setup >
 Note: The setup >
 Setup >
 Note: The setup >
 Note: The
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the dry time setting you want, and then press ok.

Note: The dry time varies depending on the print quality selected for the print job. Select **Extended** to extend the dry time for your prints.

Using the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 Click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Layout tab > Print on Both Sides (Duplex) area > select a dry time setting

Note: Under conditions of high humidity, or if the normal drying time does not allow the ink to dry completely, select **Extended**.

4 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax > select your printer

2 Navigate to:

Open Print Queue > Printer Setup > Driver tab

or

Printer Setup > Installable Options

3 From the Two-Sided Printing Dry Time pop-up menu, choose a dry time setting.

Note: Under conditions of high humidity, or if the normal drying time does not allow the ink to dry completely, choose **Extended**.

4 Click OK or Apply Changes.

Printing

Tips for printing

- Make sure the exit bin is fully extended and the bin extender is flipped out.
- Use the appropriate paper for your print job.
- Select a higher print quality for better prints.
- Make sure there is enough ink in the ink cartridges.
- Remove each sheet as it is printed when printing photos or when working with specialty media.

Printing basic documents

Printing a document

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Select the print quality, the number of copies to print, the type of paper to use, and how the pages should print.
- 4 Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 5 Click OK or Print.

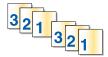
For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- **6** From the print options menu, choose the print quality, the number of copies to print, the type of paper to use, and how the pages should print.
- 7 Click Print.

Collating printed copies

When printing multiple copies of a document, you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated Not collated





Notes:

- The collate option is available only when you are printing multiple copies.
- To prevent smudging when printing photos, remove each photo as it exits the printer, and then let it dry before stacking.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Layout tab > Copies area

- **4** Enter the number of copies that you want to print, and then select **Collate**.
- **5** Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 6 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 6 From the Copies area, enter the number of copies that you want to print, and then select Collated.
- 7 Click Print.

Changing the print order of pages

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Layout tab > Copies area

- **4** To change the current page order, select the **Reverse page order** check box.
- **5** Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 6 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 6 From the print options pop-up menu, choose Paper Handling.
- 7 From the Page Order pop-up menu, choose a page order:
 - To print the first page first, choose Normal.
 - To print the last page first, choose **Reverse**.
- 8 Click Print.

Printing multiple pages on one sheet

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:
 - Layout tab > Page Layouts area > select Multiple pages per side (N-Up)
- **4** Select the number of page images to print on each side.
- **5** Adjust other settings as needed.
- **6** Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 7 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- **6** From the print options pop-up menu, choose **Layout**.
- 7 From the Pages per Sheet pop-up menu, choose the number of page images to print on each page.

- 8 Adjust other settings as needed.
- 9 Click Print.

Printing documents from a memory card or flash drive

Notes:

- The printer reads only one memory device at a time.
- Make sure the memory device contains document files that are supported by the printer.
- 1 Insert a memory card or flash drive.
 - When the printer detects the memory device, **Memory** Card Detected or Storage Device Detected appears on the display.
- 2 If document files are stored on the memory device, then the printer automatically switches to File Print mode.

 If document files and image files are stored on the memory device, then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to Documents, and then press ok.
- 3 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the document, and then press on to select the document for printing.
- **4** From the Print Options menu screen, use the arrow buttons to select your printing options, and then press or, if necessary.

Note: You may select the number of copies, color mode, print quality, paper settings, and paper-saving options. You can also enhance sharpness and use separator sheets.

5 Press ①.

Printing specialty documents

Printing envelopes

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Paper/Finishing tab > Paper size list > select your envelope size

If no size matches the envelope size, then click Manage Custom Sizes and set a custom size.

4 Navigate to:

Paper type list > select Envelope

5 Navigate to:

Layout tab > Page Orientation area > select an orientation

- **6** Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 7 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- 2 From the "Format for" pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- **3** From the Paper Size pop-up menu, choose your envelope size. If no size matches the envelope size, then set a custom size.
- 4 Select an orientation, and then click OK.
- 5 From the menu bar, choose File > Print.
- **6** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 7 Click Print.

Notes:

- Most envelopes use landscape orientation.
- Make sure the same orientation is also selected in the application.

Printing on labels

Notes:

- Make sure the top of the label sheet feeds into the printer first.
- Make sure the adhesive on the labels does not extend to within 1 mm of the edge of the label sheet.
- Make sure the paper guide or paper guides rest against the edges of the label sheet.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets (with areas exposed by missing labels) may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a paper jam.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Paper/Finishing tab > Manage Custom Sizes > New

- **4** Type a name and adjust the settings as needed to create a custom size, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Navigate to:
 - Paper type list > select the created custom type
- **6** Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 7 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the "Format for" pop-up menu, choose your printer.

- **3** From the Paper Size pop-up menu, choose your paper size. If no paper size matches the label sheet size, then set a custom size.
- 4 Select an orientation, and then click **OK**.
- **5** From the menu bar, choose **File > Print**.
- **6** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 7 From the print options pop-up menu, choose Quality & Media.
- 8 From the Paper Type pop-up menu, choose Labels.
- 9 From the Print Quality menu, choose a print quality other than Quick Print or Draft.
- 10 Click Print.

Printing on custom-size paper

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Paper/Finishing tab > Manage Custom Sizes > New

- 4 Type a name and adjust the settings as needed to create a custom size, and then click OK.
- **5** Click **Close**, and then click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 6 Click OK or Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the "Format for" pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 3 From the Paper Size pop-up menu, choose Manage Custom Sizes.
- **4** Adjust the settings as needed to create a custom size, and then click **OK**.
- 5 Click OK.
- **6** From the menu bar, choose **File > Print**.
- **7** From the printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 8 Click Print.

Working with photos

Supported memory cards and file types

Memory card	File type
Secure Digital (SD)	Documents:
Secure Digital High Capacity (SDHC)	.pdf (Adobe Portable Document Format)
Micro Secure Digital (with adapter) (Micro SD)	Images:
Mini Secure Digital (with adapter) (Mini SD)	• .jpg, .jpeg, .jpe (Joint Photographic Experts Group)
MultiMedia Card (MMC)	.tiff, .tif (Tagged Image File Format)
Reduced Size MultiMedia Card (with adapter) (RS-MMC)	
MultiMedia Card mobile (with adapter) (MMCmobile)	
Memory Stick	
Memory Stick PRO	
Memory Stick Duo (with adapter)	
Memory Stick PRO Duo (with adapter)	
xD-Picture Card	
• xD-Picture Card (Type H)	
xD-Picture Card (Type M)	

Using a memory card or flash drive with the printer

Insert a memory card into the card slot or a flash drive into the USB port.

Inserting a memory card



Notes:

- Insert the card with the brand name label facing up.
- Make sure any arrows on the card point toward the printer.
- If necessary, connect the memory card to the adapter that came with it.
- Make sure that the memory card inserted is supported by the printer. For more information, see "Supported memory cards and file types" on page 45.
- The card reader light comes on when a memory card is inserted and blinks when a memory card is being accessed.

Inserting a flash drive



Notes:

- The flash drive uses the same port that is used for a PictBridge camera cable.
- An adapter may be necessary if your flash drive does not fit directly into the port.



Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch any cables, ports, any network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.

Follow the instructions on the printer display or select from available options.

Notes:

- If the printer does not recognize the memory device, then remove and reinsert it.
- The printer reads only one memory device at a time.

Printing photos from a memory card or flash drive

- 1 Load photo paper.
- 2 Insert a memory card, flash drive, or digital camera set to mass storage mode.

If image files and document files are stored in the memory device, then press the left or right arrow button to select **Photos**, and then press or.

Note: Only files with supported file types will be shown.

- 3 Use the up or down arrow button to select a photo printing option, and then press ox.
 - Select and Print allows you to choose a layout, the number of photos per page, paper settings, photo size, photo quality, and to sharpen the quality of graphics.
 - **Print Photos** allows you to print all photos, selected photos by photo range, and print photos using predefined photo size templates.
- 4 To adjust the print settings, press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want. If necessary, press or to make a selection.
- **5** Press 🗘.

Note: For best results, allow the prints to dry at least 24 hours before stacking, displaying, or storing.

Printing photos from a PictBridge-enabled digital camera

PictBridge is a technology available in most digital cameras that lets you print directly from your digital camera without using a computer.

1 Insert one end of the USB cable into the camera.

Note: Use only the USB cable that came with the camera.

2 Insert the other end of the cable into the PictBridge port on the front of the printer.



Notes:

- Make sure that the digital camera is set to the correct USB mode. If the camera USB selection is incorrect, then the camera is detected as a flash drive, or an error message is displayed on the printer control panel. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
- The printer reads only one memory device at a time.



Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch any open connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.

- 3 If the PictBridge connection is successful, then the following message appears on the display: Use PictBridge Device to choose and print photos. Press OK to select printer default settings.
- 4 If you want to change the default print settings:
 - a Press or to access the PictBridge menu.
 - **b** Press the arrow buttons to select the paper source, paper setup, photo size, number of photos per page and print quality. You can also enhance the quality of graphics. Press each time you make a selection.

Note: The printer will use the default print settings unless you change the print settings from the camera.

5 See the documentation that came with the camera to begin printing.

Note: If you insert the USB cable of the PictBridge-enabled camera while the printer is performing another job, then wait for the job to finish before printing from the camera.

Printing on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

Printing on both sides of the paper (duplexing) automatically

The automatic duplex unit supports A4-, A5-, letter-, legal-, statement-, and executive-size paper.

Notes:

- Other paper sizes may be supported.
- Two-sided printing is not supported on envelopes, card stock, or photo paper.
- Do not remove the page until printing is finished.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:
 - Layout tab > Print on Both Sides (Duplex) area > select Print on both sides
- 4 Click **OK** to close any printer software dialogs.
- 5 Click OK or Print.

To return to single-sided printing, repeat steps 1 and 2, and then navigate to:

Layout tab > Print on Both Sides (Duplex) area > select Print on one side only

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the Page Setup dialog, set the printer, paper size, and orientation.
- 3 Click OK.
- **4** From the menu bar, choose **File > Print**.
- **5** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- **6** From the print options pop-up menu, choose **Quality & Media**.
- 7 From the Paper Type pop-up menu, choose Plain Paper.
- **8** From the print options pop-up menu, choose **Layout**.
- 9 From the Two-Sided pop-up menu, choose Long-Edge binding or Short-Edge binding.
 - For Long-Edge binding, pages are bound along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait, top edge for landscape).

Portrait Landscape





• For Short-Edge binding, pages are bound along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait, left edge for landscape).

Portrait Landscape





10 Click Print.

Setting the duplex printing dry time

Using the control panel

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
→ Setup > OK > Print Mode Setup > OK > Page Dry Time > OK
```

2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the dry time setting you want, and then press or.

Note: The dry time varies depending on the print quality selected for the print job. Select **Extended** to extend the dry time for your prints.

Using the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 Click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Layout tab > Print on Both Sides (Duplex) area > select a dry time setting

Note: Under conditions of high humidity, or if the normal drying time does not allow the ink to dry completely, select **Extended**.

4 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax > select your printer

2 Navigate to:

Open Print Queue > Printer Setup > Driver tab

or

Printer Setup > Installable Options

3 From the Two-Sided Printing Dry Time pop-up menu, choose a dry time setting.

Note: Under conditions of high humidity, or if the normal drying time does not allow the ink to dry completely, choose **Extended**.

4 Click OK or Apply Changes.

Managing print jobs

Finding the print queue for your printer

A print queue represents the printer that is connected to your computer. The print queue name is usually the printer model or the printer nickname assigned when installing or adding the printer.

Note: Several print queues may appear in the list depending on how the printer is connected (USB, Ethernet, wireless). Make sure you know how your printer is connected to the computer to be able to select the correct print queue.

For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder.
 - a Click , or click Start and then click Run.
 - **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
 - c Press Enter, or click OK.
- 2 Find the print queue for your printer (Network or USB).
- **3** If the print queue is not in the list, then create a new print queue.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax >** the print queue for your printer
- **2** If the print queue is not in the list, then create a new print queue.

Creating a print queue

For Windows users

- 1 From the Printer Tasks area, click Add a Printer.
- **2** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For more information, see the documentation that came with your operating system.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Print & Fax area, click +.
- 2 If necessary, click the **Default** or **Default Browser** tab.
- **3** Select your printer from the list.

Note: Printers connected to the network or locally through a USB cable may have the same default printer name. If necessary, use the Name field to rename the printer.

4 Click Add.

Setting your printer as the default printer

Your printer should be selected automatically from the Print dialog when you send a print job. If you have to manually select your printer, then it is not the default printer.

To set the default printer:

For Windows users

- 1 Click **4**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- **3** Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

The printers folder opens.

4 Right-click the printer, and then select **Set as Default Printer**.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax

2 Select the printer from the Default Printer pop-up menu, or select the printer and click Make Default.

Changing the default printing mode

To conserve ink, you can change the default printing mode for all print jobs to Draft or Quick Print. It uses less ink and is recommended for printing text-only documents. If you need to change to a different print mode to print photos or other high-quality documents, then you can select a different mode from the Print dialog before sending the print job.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- **3** Navigate to:

Quality tab > select a print quality > OK

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Print.
- **2** From the printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 3 From the print options pop-up menu, choose Quality & Media.
- 4 From the Print Quality pop-up menu, choose a print quality.
- 5 Click OK.

Pausing print jobs

For Windows users

1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.

- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.

The printers folder opens.

- 4 Right-click the printer, and then select **Open** or **See what's printing**.
- **5** Pause the print job:
 - If you want to pause a particular print job, then right-click the document name, and then select Pause.
 - If you want to pause all print jobs in the queue, then click Printer, and then select Pause Printing.

For Macintosh users

1 Click the printer icon on the Dock.

The print queue dialog appears.

- **2** Pause the print job:
 - If you want to pause a particular print job, then choose the document name, and then click **Hold**.
 - If you want to pause all print jobs in the queue, then click Pause Printer or Stop Jobs.

Resuming print jobs

For Windows users

- 1 Click **4**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.

The printers folder opens.

- 4 Right-click the printer, and then select **Open** or **See what's printing**.
- **5** Resume the print job:
 - If you want to resume a particular print job, then right-click the document name, and then select **Resume** or **Restart**
 - If you want to resume all print jobs in the queue, then click **Printer**, and then clear the selection for Pause Printing.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax > select your printer

2 Click Open Print Queue or Set Up Printers.

The print queue dialog appears.

- **3** Resume the print job:
 - If you want to resume a particular print job, then choose the document name, and then click **Resume**.
 - If you want to resume all print jobs in the queue, then click Resume Printer or Start Jobs.

Canceling print jobs

To cancel a print job from the printer control panel, press \bigotimes . To cancel a print job from the computer, do the following:

For Windows users

- 1 Click **4**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
 The printers folder opens.
- 4 Right-click the printer, and then select Open or See what's printing.
- **5** Cancel the print job:
 - If you want to cancel a particular print job, then right-click the document name, and then select **Cancel**.
 - If you want to cancel all print jobs in the queue, then click **Printer > Cancel All Documents**.

For Macintosh users

- Click the printer icon on the Dock.
 The print queue dialog appears.
- **2** Choose the job you want to cancel, and then click **Delete**.

Printing from a mobile device

What is LexPrint?

LexPrint is a free application that lets you print easily from your iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch using any Lexmark printer connected to the same wireless network. It lets you print Web pages, photos from the photo album, or photos you recently captured using the camera of your mobile device, depending on its features. You can also customize print settings from your mobile device.

Depending on your Lexmark printer model, you may need to download the LexPrint Listener application from our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/lexprint**.

Supported printers

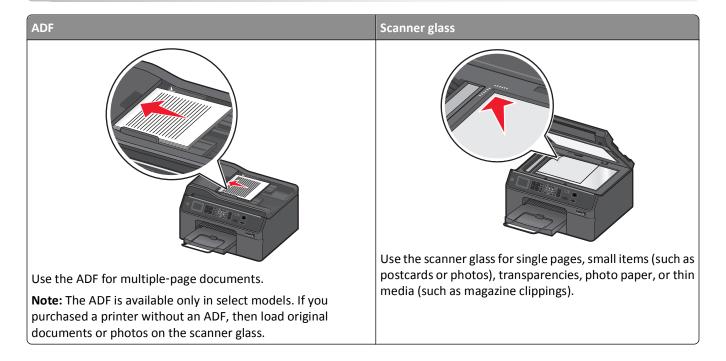
LexPrint enables your mobile device to communicate with Lexmark printers found on the same network.

• For select printer models that support Direct Image and Zeroconf or Bonjour, you can print directly from your mobile device to the printer without using LexPrint Listener. To check if your printer model supports these features, visit www.lexmark.com/lexprint.

• For other Lexmark printers, your mobile device can send print jobs to your printer as long as the printer software and **LexPrint Listener** are installed on the computer where the printer is connected.

Note: The application referred to as *Rendezvous* in Mac OS X version 10.2 is now called *Bonjour* by Apple Inc.

Copying



Tips for copying

- Make sure the exit bin is fully extended and the bin extender is flipped out.
- Use the ADF when scanning two-sided pages if your printer supports duplex scanning and the ADF supports the
 original document size.
- Use the scanner glass when scanning two-sided pages if your printer does not support duplex scanning or the ADF does not support the original document size.
- When using the ADF, adjust the paper guides on the ADF to the width of the original document.
- To easily retrieve a document after copying or scanning, lift the ADF input tray.
- When using the scanner glass, close the scanner cover, if possible, to avoid dark edges on the scanned image.
- Do *not* load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- When the document to be copied is in place with the settings you want, press

 to start copying.

Making copies

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load an original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **4** Press the left or right arrow button to select the number of copies.

5 From the Copy menu screen, press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want. If necessary, press to make a selection.

- **6** Select the copy mode:
 - Press 🔓 to switch to color mode.
 - Press on to switch to black-and-white mode.

When you select color or black-only printing, the light that corresponds to your choice comes on.

7 Press **♦**.

Note: The selected copy settings are reset to the factory default after two minutes of printer inactivity.

Copying an ID card

- 1 Load plain A4- or letter-size paper.
- **2** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **3** Press \bigcirc , and then load the front side of the ID card facedown at the placement corner of the scanner glass.
- 4 Press 🕦.
- 5 When prompted to copy the back side of the ID card, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to Yes, and then press ok.
- **6** Load the back side of the ID card facedown at the placement corner of the scanner glass, and then press ◆.

Enlarging or reducing images

- 1 Load paper.
- **2** Load the original document facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the Scale setting you want.

Notes:

- If you select Custom %, then press ox, and then press the left or right arrow button to select a custom percent value. Press ox to save the setting.
- If you select Borderless, then the printer will reduce or enlarge the document or photo as necessary to print a borderless copy on the paper size that you selected. For best results with this setting, use photo paper and set the paper type to Photo.
- If you select Fit to Page, then the printer scales the document or photo proportionately to fit a single page.
- **5** Press ♦.

Adjusting copy quality

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **4** Press the left or right arrow button to set the copy quality.
- **5** Press 🗘.

Making a copy lighter or darker

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - ☆ > Copy > OK > Darkness
- **4** Press the left or right arrow button to adjust the darkness of your prints.
 - Pressing the left arrow button makes the copy lighter.
 - Pressing the right arrow button makes the copy darker.
- **5** Press ①.

Collating copies using the printer control panel

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated Not collated





- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to select the number of copies.
- **5** Press the up or down arrow button until **Collate** appears.
- **6** Press the left or right arrow button to scroll to **On**, and then press **♦**.

Placing separator sheets between copies

A separator sheet is a sheet of paper placed between pages, copies, or jobs based on the setting selected. This feature is useful when printing transparencies.

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

Note: Collate must be set to On for the separator sheets to be placed between copies. If Collate is set to Off, then the separator sheets are added at the end of the print job.

4 Press the left or right arrow button to select a separator sheet setting, and then press **♦**.

Copying multiple pages on one sheet

You can copy multiple pages on one sheet by printing smaller images of each page. For example, you can condense a 20-page document into five pages if you use this setting to print four page images per sheet.

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

- **4** Press the left or right arrow button to select the paper orientation and the number of pages that you want to copy on a sheet of paper. You may print up to four page images on one sheet.
- **5** Press ①.

Placing an overlay message on each page

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

4 Press the left or right arrow button to select an overlay setting.

Note: For select printer models with a keypad, use the keypad to enter a custom text overlay, and then press ok.

5 Press ①.

Removing the background of a copy

The Background Removal feature adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy.

- **1** Load paper.
- **2** Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to select the amount of background removal.
- **5** Press ①.

Making a duplex copy

Making a duplex (two-sided) copy automatically

The automatic duplex unit supports A4-, A5-, letter-, legal-, statement-, and executive-size paper. If you need to make two-sided copies using other paper sizes, then see the instructions for making a two-sided copy manually.

Note: You cannot make two-sided copies on envelopes, card stock, or photo paper.

- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **4** Press the left or right arrow button to select a two-sided copying option:
 - If you are copying a one-sided document, then press the arrow buttons to scroll to 1-sided to 2-sided.
 - If you want to specify the page orientation and layout of the original document and the copy, then press the arrow buttons to scroll to **Advanced**. Press every time you make a selection, and then press until you reach the Copy menu screen.

Notes:

- For long-edged binding, pages are bound along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation).
- For short-edged binding, pages are bound along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation).
- **5** Press \diamondsuit , and then follow the instructions on the display.

Making a duplex (two-sided) copy manually

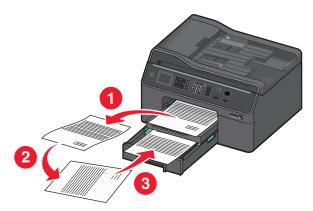
- 1 Load paper.
- 2 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

3 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

- 4 Press the left or right arrow button to select the number of copies.
- 5 From the Copy menu screen, press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want. If necessary, press to make a selection.
- **6** Select the copy mode:
 - Press 4 to switch to color mode.
 - Press on to switch to black-and-white mode.

When you select color or black-only printing, the light that corresponds to your choice comes on.

- **7** Press 1 to print on one side of the paper.
- **8** Load the next page of the document.
 - If you are copying a one-sided document, then load the next page faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
 - If you are copying a two-sided document, then flip the original document, and then reload it faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **9** Remove the paper from the exit bin, and then reload the paper to print the other side of the document. Make sure the paper is loaded with the printable side facedown.



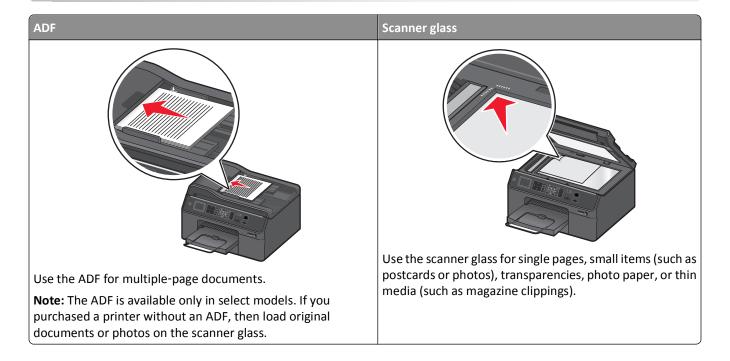
- 10 When prompted to confirm the paper settings, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to Yes, and then press ok.
- **11** Press **1**.

Canceling copy jobs

To cancel a copy job, press \otimes .

Scanning stops and the printer returns to the previous menu.

Scanning



Tips for scanning

- Use the ADF when scanning two-sided pages if your printer supports duplex scanning and the ADF supports the original document size.
- Use the scanner glass when scanning two-sided pages if your printer does not support duplex scanning or the ADF does not support the original document size.
- When using the ADF, adjust the paper guides on the ADF to the width of the original document.
- To easily retrieve a document after copying or scanning, lift the ADF input tray.
- When using the scanner glass, close the scanner cover, if possible, to avoid dark edges on the scanned image.
- Do *not* load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- When the document to be scanned is in place with the settings you want, press

 to start scanning.

Scanning to a local computer

- 1 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Scan >

 Computer > USB-Connected Computer >

 OK

The USB-connected computer will receive the scan by default.

Note: Make sure the scan software is installed on the destination computer.

3 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the scan option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want.

Set the color, quality, original image size, and other scan options. If necessary, press each time you make a selection.

4 Press 🕦.

Scanning to a network computer

- 1 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- 3 Press the left or right arrow button to manually select the name of the destination computer, and then press or.

Notes:

- You may be prompted to enter a PIN if the computer requires it.
- To assign a computer name and a PIN to the computer, see the Help for the printer software associated with your operating system.
- **4** Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the scan option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want.
 - Set the color, quality, original image size, and other scan options. If necessary, press or each time you make a selection.
- **5** Press 🕩.

Note: For Macintosh users, you may need to enable scanning to your computer through Image Capture to scan documents using a network printer and save the scan output.

Scanning to a flash drive or memory card

Notes:

- Some features are available only in select printer models.
- Make sure your flash drive or memory card is not write-protected.
- 1 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** From the printer control panel navigate to:
- 3 Insert the flash drive or memory card, and then press ok.

Note: The printer reads only one memory device at a time.

4 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the scan option you want to set, and then press the left or right arrow button to scroll to the setting you want.

Set the color, quality, original image size, and other scan options. If necessary, press each time you make a selection.

5 Press 🕦.

Follow the instructions on the printer display.

Scanning photos for editing

For Windows users

- 1 Load photo or photos facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 Click or Start.
- 3 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 4 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > **Scan**

- If you want to scan a single photo, or multiple photos as a single image, then select **Single photo**.
- If you want to scan multiple photos at once and save them as separate images, then select **Multiple photos**.

Note: Allow at least 1/4 inch of space between photos if you want to scan multiple photos at once and save them as separate images.

Scanning starts and the scan progress dialog appears.

5 Save the photo or photos, and open them in a photo editing application to edit.

For Macintosh users

- **1** Load photo or photos facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** From the Applications folder in the Finder, launch the application you want to use.

Note: Use any application that supports your printer and lets you work with photos, such as Image Capture.

3 From the list of devices, select your printer.

Note: For information on finding the list of devices, check the documentation that came with the application or search for **Scanning** an **image** in the Search field of the Help menu.

4 Adjust the scan settings as needed.

If applicable, click ? on the preview dialog for more information.

- **5** Start the scan job.
- **6** Save the scanned image, and then edit it using a photo editing application.

Scanning documents for editing

An Optical Character Recognition (OCR) application allows you to edit an original text document that has been scanned. In order for this to work, you must have an OCR application stored on a local or network computer and you must be able to select it from the list of applications when you set up the scan.

When selecting settings for the scan, select to scan to the local computer or network computer where the OCR is installed.

For Windows users

- 1 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 Click or Start.
- 3 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 4 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > **Scan** > **Document**

Scanning starts and the scan progress dialog appears.

5 When the scan is finished, save the document.

The file will be converted into a format that can be edited.

6 Open the document in the appropriate application to edit it.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Load the original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- **2** From the Applications folder in the Finder, launch the application you want to use.

Notes:

- Use any application that supports your printer and lets you work with the OCR software, ABBYY FineReader.
- If the OCR software is missing, then insert the installation software CD. Reinstall the printer software using the custom install option so you can manually select all of the packages listed.
- **3** From the list of devices, select your printer.

Note: For information on finding the list of devices, check the documentation that came with the application or search for **Scanning** an **image** in the Search field of the Help menu.

4 Adjust the scan settings as needed.

If applicable, click ? on the preview dialog for more information.

- **5** Set the OCR software as the scan destination, and then start the scan job.
- **6** If necessary, select the format to which you want to convert the file.
- **7** Save the file.

Note: Depending on your settings, the file may open immediately in the appropriate application so you can start editing.

Scanning directly to e-mail using the printer software

Make sure you have set up your e-mail settings before proceeding. For more information, see the section on e-mailing in the *User's Guide*.

For Windows users

- 1 Load an original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 Click or Start.
- 3 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 4 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Scan

5 Select Email photo, Email document, or Email PDF.

Note: You can select **Email document** only if an OCR application is stored on your computer.

Scanning starts and the scan progress dialog appears. When the scan is finished, a new e-mail message is created with the scanned document automatically attached.

6 Compose your e-mail message.

Note: If your e-mail program does not open automatically, then you can scan the document to the computer and then send it through e-mail as an attachment.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Load an original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 From the Applications folder in the Finder, launch the application you want to use.

Note: Use any application that supports both your printer and an e-mailing option, such as Image Capture.

3 From the list of devices, select your printer.

Note: For information on finding the list of devices, check the documentation that came with the application, or search for **Scanning** an **image** in the Search field of the Help menu.

4 Adjust the scan settings as needed.

If applicable, click on the preview dialog for more information.

- **5** Set the e-mail application as the scan destination, and then start the scan job.
- 6 Compose your e-mail message.

Scanning to a PDF

For Windows users

- 1 Load an original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 Click or Start.

- 3 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 4 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Scan > PDF

Scanning starts and the scan progress dialog appears.

5 Save the document as a PDF.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Load an original document faceup into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
- 2 From the Applications folder in the Finder, launch the application you want to use.

Note: Use any application that supports your printer.

3 From the list of devices, select your printer.

Note: For information on finding the list of devices, check the documentation that came with the application or search for **Scanning** an **image** in the Search field of the Help menu.

4 Adjust the scan settings as needed.

If applicable, click ? on the preview dialog for more information.

- 5 Set the application that supports the PDF format as the scan destination, and then start the scan job.
- **6** Save the document as a PDF.

Scanning FAQ

How can I improve the quality of a scan?

- Make sure your original documents are in good condition.
- Make sure the application that receives the scanned document is appropriate. For example, if you are scanning a
 photo to edit it, then make sure you choose a photo editing application to receive the scan. If you are scanning a
 document to edit the text, then make sure you choose an OCR application.
- Use a high resolution.

How do I scan in black and white?

Color is the default for all scans. To scan in black and white, press _ on the printer control panel.

Why am I being asked for a PIN?

PINs are a security measure used to restrict the scanned information from going into certain locations, or to keep what is being scanned from being seen or used by others. You may be prompted to enter a PIN if the network computer you are scanning to requires one.

To learn how PINs get assigned to network computers, see the Help for the printer software associated with your operating system.

Canceling scan jobs

Press \bigotimes on the printer control panel, or click **Cancel** on the computer screen.

E-mailing 69

E-mailing

You can use your printer to send e-mail to one or more recipients without using a computer provided you have set up the scan to e-mail task through shortcuts. For more information, see the section on shortcuts in the *User's Guide*.

Before you can send e-mail using the printer control panel, you must first configure the network connection and e-mail settings of your printer.

Setting up the printer to e-mail

Setting up the e-mail function

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > **Settings** > **Set up the printer to e-mail** The E-mail Setup Wizard opens.

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder > Printer Settings > Email

2 Follow the instructions on the computer screen, and then click **Save Settings**.

Configuring e-mail settings

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > E-mail/FTP Settings > E-mail Settings.
- **3** Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.
- 4 Click Submit.

E-mailing 70

Creating an e-mail contact list

Creating an e-mail contact list using the computer

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Fax > Edit contact list > Select from Phone Book

- **4** From the Phone Book field, choose a phone book.

 You can choose any mail client phone book where you store e-mail addresses.
- 5 Select the contact that you want to add, and then click Add to or change list to import the contact.
- 6 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > select your printer folder

- 2 Double-click Printer Settings.
- 3 Navigate to:

Contacts tab > Individuals tab

4 Click 1 to open the Address Book.

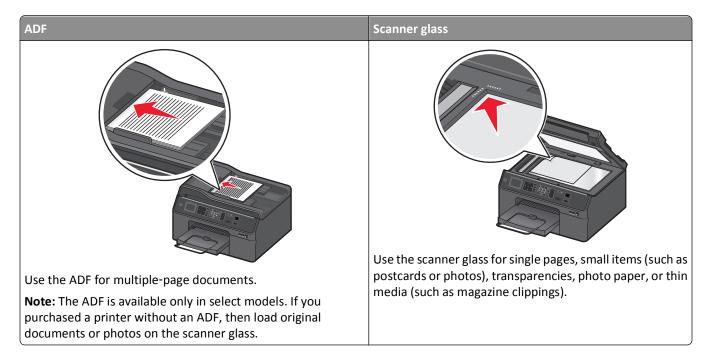
Note: To add contacts, you need to import contacts from the Address Book on your Macintosh computer. If the contact is not in the Mac Address Book, then first add the contact to the address book and then import it.

5 From the Address Book, click and drag the contacts that you want to add to the Contacts list.

For more information, click **Help** or ? to view the help information for the fax software.

E-mailing 71

Sending e-mail



Tips for e-mailing

- Make sure to enter your e-mail account information and set up the SMTP server before sending an e-mail.
- Make sure the printer is connected to an Ethernet or wireless network before sending an e-mail.
 If necessary, make sure the network is connected to the Internet for the printer to communicate with the SMTP server. If the printer cannot connect to the Internet, then contact your system support person.

The printer supports only one active network connection (Ethernet or wireless) at a time.

- Add contacts to your address book. When sending an e-mail, you can just select contacts from your address book
 instead of typing their e-mail addresses repeatedly.
- Use the ADF when scanning two-sided pages if your printer supports duplex scanning and the ADF supports the original document size.
- Use the scanner glass when scanning two-sided pages if your printer does not support duplex scanning or the ADF does not support the original document size.
- When using the ADF, adjust the paper guides on the ADF to the width of the original document.
- To easily retrieve a document after copying or scanning, lift the ADF input tray.
- When using the scanner glass, close the scanner cover, if possible, to avoid dark edges on the scanned image.
- Do *not* load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- When the document to be e-mailed is in place with the settings you want, press \diamondsuit to start scanning.

Canceling an e-mail

To cancel an e-mail, press \otimes .

Faxing 72

Faxing



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce risk of fire, use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a UL Listed 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.

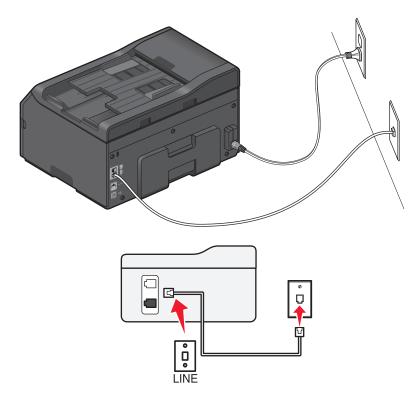


CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power supply cord or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Setting up the printer to fax

Scenario 1: Standard telephone line

Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



To connect:

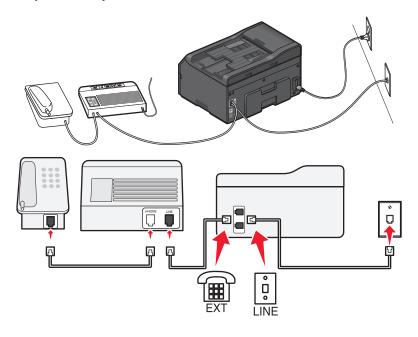
Connect the cable from the wall jack to the port of the printer.

Tips for this setup:

- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On) or manually (Auto Answer Off).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), then set the printer to pick up on any number of rings that you want.

Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine

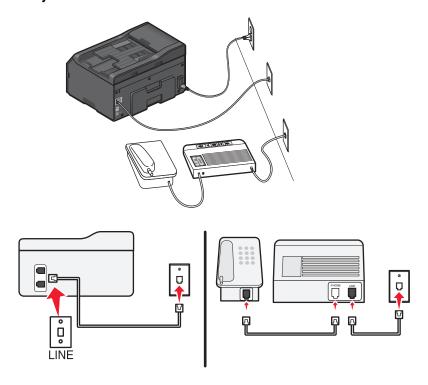
Connected to the same telephone wall jack



To connect:

- 1 Connect the cable from the wall jack to the $\dot{\bullet}$ port of the printer.
- 2 Remove the protective plug from the port of the printer, and then connect the answering machine to the port.

Connected to different wall jacks



To connect:

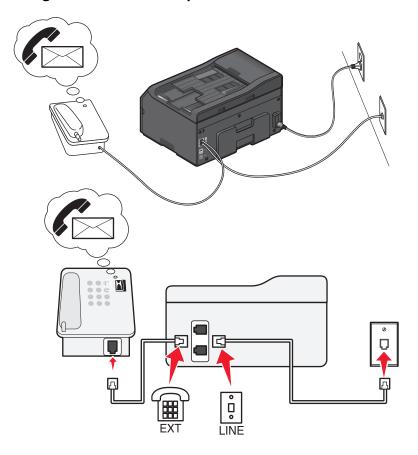
Connect the cable from the wall jack to the printer.

Tips for this setup:

• If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On).

- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call.
- If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service provided by your telephone company, then make sure that you set the
 correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer will not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive
 faxes automatically.

Setup 3: Printer is sharing the line with a telephone subscribed to voice mail service



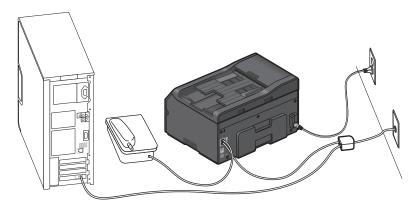
- 1 Connect the cable from the wall jack to the | port of the printer.
- **2** Remove the protective plug from the port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.

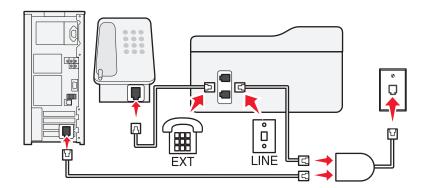
Tips for this setup:

• This setup works best if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service. If you have distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer will not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off).
 - When you answer the telephone and you hear fax tones, press *9* or the manual answer code on the telephone to receive the fax.
- You can also set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), but you need to turn off the voice mail service when you are expecting a fax. This setting works best if you are using voice mail more often than fax.

Scenario 2: Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)





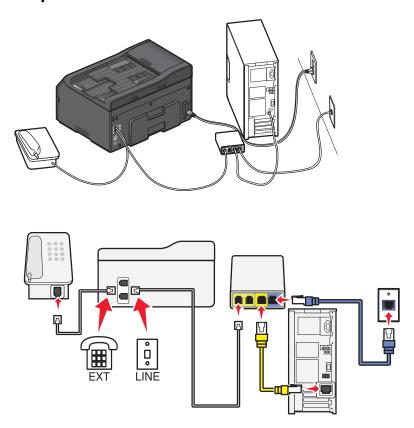
A Digital Subscriber Line splits your regular telephone line into two channels: voice and Internet. Telephone and fax signals travel through the voice channel, and Internet signals pass through the other channel. This way, you can use the same line for analog voice calls (including faxes) and digital Internet access.

To minimize interference between the two channels and ensure a quality connection, you need to install a DSL filter for the analog devices (fax machine, telephone, answering machine) in your network. Interference causes noise and static on the telephone, failed and poor quality faxes for the printer, and slow Internet connection on your computer.

To install a filter for the printer:

- 1 Connect the line port of the DSL filter to the wall jack.
- 2 Connect a telephone cable from the | port on the back of the printer to the phone port on the DSL filter.
- 3 To continue using a computer for Internet access, connect the computer to the DSL HPN port on the DSL filter.
- **4** To connect a telephone to the printer, remove the protective plug from the printer and then connect the telephone to the port.

Scenario 3: VoIP telephone service



- 1 Connect one end of a telephone cable to the [i] port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled Phone Line 1 or Phone Port on the VoIP adapter.
 The port labeled Phone Line 2 or Fax Port is not always active. You may need to pay extra to your VoIP provider if you want to activate the second phone port.
- **3** Remove the protective plug from the port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.

Tips for this setup:

• To make sure that the phone port on the VoIP adapter is active, plug an analog telephone into the phone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.

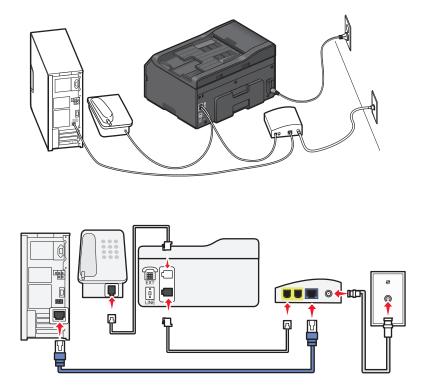
• If you need two phone ports for your devices but do not want to pay extra, then do not plug the printer into the second phone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.

Make sure you use a phone splitter, *not* a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

Scenario 4: Digital telephone service through a cable provider

Setup 1: Printer is connected directly to a cable modem

Follow this setup if you normally connect your telephone to a cable modem.



- **1** Connect one end of a telephone cable to the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled Phone Line 1 or Phone Port on the cable modem.
 The port labeled Phone Line 2 or Fax Port is not always active. You may need to pay extra to your cable provider if you want to activate the second phone port.
- **3** Remove the protective plug from the port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.

Tips for this setup:

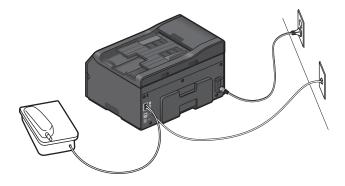
• To make sure that the phone port on the cable modem is active, plug an analog telephone into the phone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.

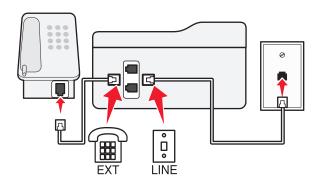
• If you need two phone ports for your devices but do not want to pay extra, then do not plug the printer into the second phone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.

Make sure you use a phone splitter, not a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

Setup 2: Printer is connected to a wall jack; cable modem is installed elsewhere in the house

Follow this setup if your cable provider activated the wall jacks in your house so that you do not have to plug your devices into the cable modem. Your cable telephone service comes from the wall jacks.

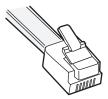




- **1** Connect the cable from the wall jack to the printer.
- **2** Remove the protective plug from the port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.

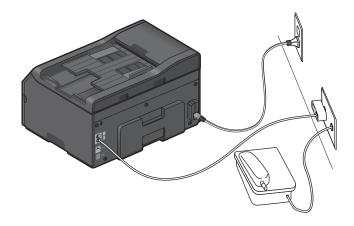
Scenario 5: Country- or region-specific setup

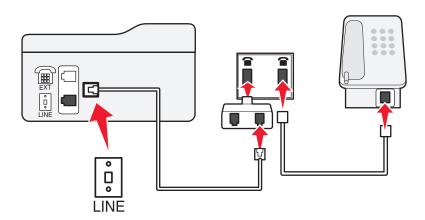
Different countries or regions have different types of telephone wall jacks. The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is the Registered Jack-11 (RJ-11). You need to have an RJ-11 plug, or a telephone cable that has an RJ-11 connector, so you can connect a device to an RJ-11 wall jack.



The fax ports on the back of the printer and the telephone cable that comes with the printer have RJ-11 connectors. If you have a different type of connector in your country or region, then you may need to use an RJ-11 adapter.

Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack





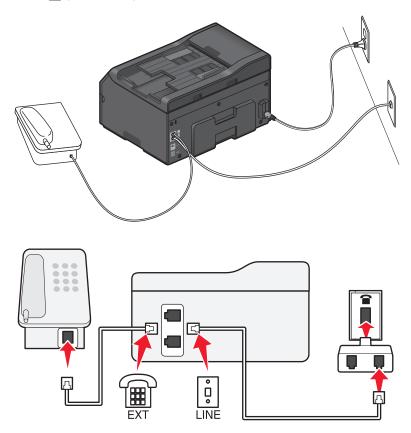
- 1 Connect one end of a telephone cable to the [i] port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.

3 If you want to connect another device (telephone or answering machine) to the same wall jack, and if the device has a non-RJ 11 connector, then connect it directly to the wall jack.

Notes:

- Do *not* remove the wrap plug from the printer.
- The printer may not come with an RJ-11 adapter in your country or region.

If the additional device (telephone or answering machine) has an RJ-11 connector, then you can remove the wrap plug and connect the device to the printer.

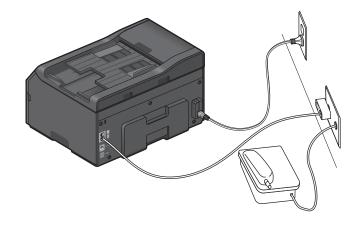


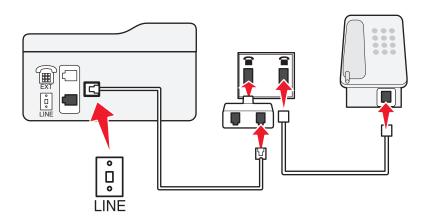
Connecting the printer in countries or regions that use serial connection

In some countries or regions, you need to plug all devices into the wall jack. You cannot plug a telephone or answering machine into the port of the printer. This is called *serial connection*.

Austria	Germany	Portugal
Belgium	Ireland	Spain
Denmark	Italy	Sweden
France	Netherlands	Switzerland
Finland	Norway	United Kingdom

Warning—Potential Damage: If your country or region is on the list, then do *not* remove the wrap plug from the port of the printer. It is necessary for the proper functioning of the devices on the telephone line.



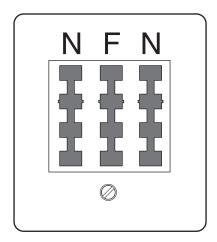


To connect:

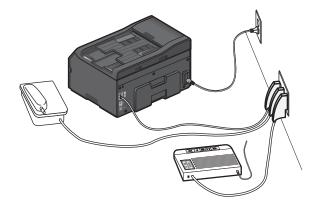
Connect the cable from the wall jack to the $\dot{\underline{\bullet}}$ port of the printer.

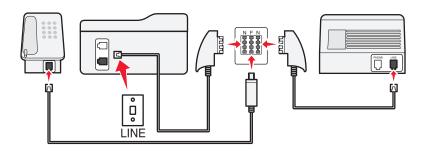
Connecting the printer to a wall jack in Germany

The German wall jack has two kinds of ports. The N ports are for fax machines, modems, and answering machines. The F port is for telephones.



Connect the printer to any of the N ports.





To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of a telephone cable to the [i] port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to an N port.
- **3** If you want to connect a telephone and answering machine to the same wall jack, then connect the devices as shown.

Entering your user information

Your user information includes your name or your company name, your fax number (which is your telephone number, unless you have a dedicated fax telephone line), and the time and date on your fax machine when a transmission is made. This information appears in the header and footer of the faxes that you send.

In some countries, you cannot send a fax without this information. Some fax machines block faxes without sender information, so make sure that you enter this information in your printer.

Setting the fax header

- **1** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **2** Enter your name or your company name, and then press ok.
 - To change a character, press the left arrow button.
 - To add a space, press the number 0.

- 3 Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Fax Number, and then press or.
- 4 Enter your fax number or your telephone number, and then press ok.

Setting the fax footer

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

→ > Setup > ○K > Fax Setup > ○K > Ringing and Answering > ○K > Fax Footer > ○K > On > ○K

Setting the date and time

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

→ > Setup > OK > Device Setup > OK > Date/Time > OK

- **2** Enter the date, and then press ok.
- **3** Enter the time, and then press **o**k.

Configuring the fax settings

You can configure the fax settings through the printer control panel or the computer through the Printer Setup Utility. If you configure the fax settings through the printer control panel, then the Printer Setup Utility imports those settings. The changes appear the next time you launch the Printer Setup Utility. The printer also saves the settings that you choose in the utility, unless you set the printer to block changes made from the computer.

Configuring fax settings using the printer control panel

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

2 Configure the fax settings using the selections in the menu:

From here	You can
Address Book	Set up, view, or print the Address Book.
Reports	Print activity logs. Activity logs let you view the sent and received fax history of your printer.
	Print confirmation pages or transmission reports. These reports let you know if the faxes that you send are sent successfully.

From here	You can
Ringing and Answering	 Set the printer to receive faxes automatically or manually. Turn Auto Answer to On or Off.
	Adjust the ringing volume.
	• Set the number of rings. This is important if you choose to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On).
	 Set the distinctive ring. If you subscribe to the distinctive ring feature on your telephone line, then set the correct pattern for the printer in this menu.
	Enable fax forwarding.
	• Set a manual answer code. This is the code you press to receive faxes manually.
	 Set the Caller ID pattern that you want. Some countries or regions have multiple patterns.
	Set the printer to fit incoming faxes into a page when printing.
	Set the fax footer.
2-Sided Faxes	Set the printer to print incoming faxes on both sides of the paper.
Dialing and Sending	Set your fax name and fax number.
	Adjust the dialing volume.
	 Set the dial method, redial time, number of redial attempts, dialing prefix, and fax sending speed.
	 Convert sent faxes into modes that receiving fax machines recognize. Otherwise, such faxes are aborted.
	Enable error correction during transmission.
Fax Blocking	Block unwanted incoming faxes.

Configuring fax settings using the fax software

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The printer is properly connected to the telephone line.
- The printer is turned on and connected to the computer.
- The printer is not in Sleep mode. If the printer is in Sleep mode, then press () to wake up the printer.

Using the Fax Setup Wizard in Windows

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Click Printer Home > Fax > Set up the printer to fax.
 The Fax Setup Wizard opens.
- 4 Run the Fax Setup Wizard. Make sure you select the correct telephone service and connection. The wizard configures optimal fax settings based on your connection.

Note: If you want to configure the advanced fax settings, then from the Printer Home, click **Fax > Configure the advanced fax settings**. This launches the Printer Setup Utility.

Using the Printer Settings in Macintosh

- 1 From the Applications folder in the Finder, or from the Finder desktop, double-click the printer folder.
- 2 Double-click Printer Settings.
- **3** Configure the fax settings using the printer software.

To view the help information for the fax software, click **Help** or ?.



Creating a contact list

You can create a contact list using the Address Book in the printer control panel or the computer through the Phone Book. If you create a contact list in the printer control panel, then the Phone Book automatically saves those contacts as Phone Book entries. Likewise, when you add contacts to the Phone Book, the printer automatically saves them to the printer Address Book.

You can save up to 89 contacts and 10 fax groups in the contact list.

Creating a contact list using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > ○K > Fax Setup > ○K > Address Book > ○K
- **2** To add a fax number to your Address Book:
 - a Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Add Entry, and then press ok.
 - **b** Use the keypad to enter the contact name in the Name field.
 - To change a character, press the left arrow button.
 - To add a space, press the number 0.
 - c Press the up or down arrow button to move the cursor to the Number field.
 - **d** Use the keypad to enter the fax number in the Number field, and then press or to save the entry.
 - **e** If you want to add another entry, then repeat steps a through d.
- **3** To add a fax group:
 - a Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Add Group, and then press ok.
 - **b** Use the keypad to enter a group name, and then press or
 - To change a character, press the left arrow button.
 - To add a space, press the number 0.
 - c Press the arrow buttons to select whether you want to add a contact manually or import a contact. Press or when you make a selection.
 - If you want to add a contact manually, then use the keypad to enter the fax number, and then press or.
 - If you want to import a contact, then press the arrow buttons to select a contact from the Address Book or the History List. Press or when you make a selection.
 - **d** When you are finished adding contacts to the group, select **Done**.

Creating a contact list using the fax software

For Windows users

1 Click or Start.

- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Click Printer Home > Fax > Edit contact list.

The Contacts tab of the Printer Setup Utility opens.

- 4 Click Select from phonebook.
- **5** From the Phonebook field, choose a phone book.
- 6 Select the contact that you want to add, and then click Add to or change list to import the contact.

Note: To add contacts, you need to import contacts from the phone books on your computer that are supported by the fax software. In addition to the software Address Book, you may also have phone books of the mail clients installed on your computer, such as Microsoft Outlook.

7 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Applications folder in the Finder, or from the Finder desktop, double-click the printer folder.
- 2 Double-click Printer Settings.
- **3** Click the **Contacts** tab.
 - To add contacts, click the Individuals tab.
 - To add fax groups, click the **Groups** tab.
- 4 Click 1 to open the Address Book.

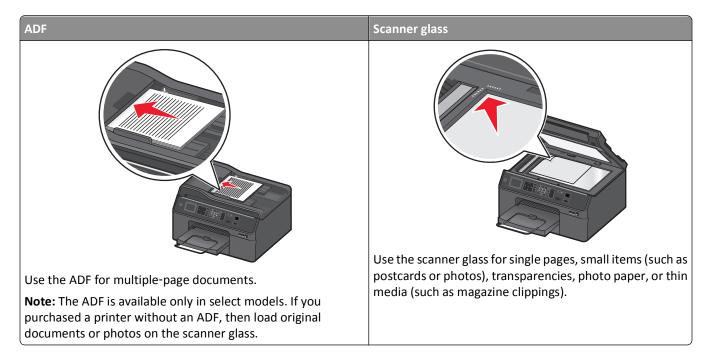
Note: To add contacts, you need to import contacts from the Address Book on your Macintosh computer. If the contact is not in the Mac Address Book, then first add the contact to the address book, and then import it.

5 From the Address Book, click and drag the contacts that you want to add to the Contacts list.

For more information on the fax software, click **Help** or ?.



Sending faxes



Tips for sending faxes

- Make sure the printer is on and connected to a working telephone, DSL, or VoIP line. The line is working if you hear
 a dial tone.
- Make sure the exit bin is fully extended and the bin extender is flipped out.
- Depending on your printer model, use the ADF when scanning two-sided (duplex) pages.
- To easily retrieve a document after copying or scanning, lift the ADF input tray.
- When using the ADF, adjust the paper guide on the ADF to the width of the original document.
- When using the scanner glass, close the scanner cover, if possible, to avoid dark edges on the scanned image.
- Do *not* load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- When the document to be faxed is in place with the settings you want, press

 to send the fax.

Sending faxes using the printer control panel

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



- 2 Enter a fax number, or press Address Book to select a number from the Speed Dial or Group Dial list.
- 3 If you want to send a fax to a single recipient, then press .

 If you want to send a fax to a group of numbers (broadcast fax), then press the left or right arrow button to enter another number, and then press .

 Repeat this step to add more numbers.

- 4 Press the Color/Black button to select a color or black-and-white fax.
- **5** Press **1** to start the fax job.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the cables or the [] and [] ports while actively sending a fax.

Tip:

• You can send a broadcast fax to up to 30 recipients.

Sending faxes using the computer

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Make sure the appropriate printer is selected, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Click the Fax tab, and then make sure Enable Fax is selected.
- 4 Enter the recipient fax number or numbers in the "Fax number(s)" field.

 You can enter fax numbers manually or by using the Phone Book feature.
- 5 If necessary, enter a prefix in the Dialing Prefix dialog.
- **6** Select the appropriate paper size and page orientation.
- 7 Select Include Cover Page with Fax, and enter the appropriate information if you want to include a cover page with the fax.
- 8 Click OK.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Print.
- **2** From the Printer pop-up menu, select the fax version of your printer.
 - **Note:** In order to see the fax options on the Print dialog, you must use the fax driver for your printer. If the fax version of the printer is not on the list, then choose **Add a printer**, and then choose the fax version of the printer.
- **3** Enter the name and number of the recipient.
- 4 Click Fax.

Receiving faxes

Tips for receiving faxes

When receiving faxes:

- Make sure that the printer is on and connected to a working telephone, DSL, or VoIP line. The line is working if you
 hear a dial tone.
- If you set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off), then make sure that the ringer volume is not set to Off.

• If you have set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), then load paper in the printer.

Receiving faxes automatically

1 Make sure that Auto Answer is on:

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
    Setup > ok > Fax Setup > ok > Ringing and Answering > ok > Auto Answer > ok > On > ok
```

- **2** Set the number of rings before the printer picks up incoming faxes:
 - a Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Pick Up On, and then press or.
 - **b** Press the arrow buttons to scroll to the number of rings that you want, and then press to save the setting. When the number of rings you set is detected, the printer automatically receives the incoming fax.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the cables or the [4] and [77] ports while actively receiving a fax.

Tips:

- If the printer is sharing the line with other analog devices (telephone, answering machine), then set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call. If the printer is on a dedicated fax line, then you may set the printer to pick up on any number of rings.
- If you have multiple numbers on a single line, or if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service provided by your telephone company, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer will not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

Receiving faxes manually

1 Turn off Auto Answer:

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
☆ > Setup > OK > Fax Setup > OK > Ringing and Answering > OK > Auto Answer > OK > Off > OK
```

2 When the telephone rings and you hear fax tones when you pick up the handset, press \diamondsuit on the printer or *9* on the telephone attached to the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the cables or the [4] and [77] ports while actively receiving a fax.

Tips:

- The default code for answering faxes manually is *9*, but for increased security, you can change it to a number that only you know. You can enter up to 7 characters for your code. The valid characters are the digits 0–9 and the characters # and *.
- Make sure that the telephone is plugged into the printer on the back of the printer and that the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the wall jack through the printer is connected to the printer is connected through the printer is connected through the printer is connected to the printer is connected through the printer is connected to the printer is connected through the print

Faxing FAQ

If I skipped the fax setup initially, do I need to run the installer again to set up the fax?

You do not need to run the installer again. You can set up and configure the fax through the fax software that was installed with the printer software.

- 1 Connect the printer to the telephone line. For more information, see "Setting up the printer to fax" on page 72.
- **2** Configure the fax settings using the fax software. To access the fax software:

For Windows users

- a Click or Start.
- **b** Click **All Programs** or **Programs**, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- c Click Printer Home > Fax >Set up the printer to fax. The Fax Setup Wizard opens.
- **d** Run the wizard. Make sure you select the correct telephone service and connection. The wizard configures optimal fax settings based on your connection.

For Macintosh users

- a From the Applications folder in the Finder, or from the Finder desktop, double-click the printer folder.
- **b** Double-click **Printer Settings**, and then configure the fax settings.

What is a splitter and what type of splitter should I use?

If there are limited wall jacks in your home or limited ports on your adapter, then you can use a phone splitter. A splitter splits the telephone signal and allows you to connect multiple devices to the wall jack. It has two or more ports where you can plug the devices. Do *not* use a line splitter.

To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

What is my fax number?

In most cases, your telephone number is also your fax number. If you subscribe to the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) service offered by telephone companies, then your fax number is the number that you assigned to the printer. Make sure that you enter the correct distinctive ring pattern for that number in the fax software or in the Fax Setup menu of the printer control panel.

If you have more than one telephone line, then make sure that you enter the number for the line on which the printer is connected.

What is my dialing prefix?

The dialing prefix is the number or series of numbers that you press before you can dial the actual fax number or telephone number. If the printer is in an office setting or in a private branch exchange, then this can be a specific number that you need to press so you can make a call outside the office. This can also be a country code or an area code that you need to enter if you are sending faxes outside of town. This can be very useful if you frequently send faxes to the same country or area. When you set the dialing prefix in the utility, the printer automatically inputs the prefix when you dial the fax number or telephone number.

You can enter up to 8 characters as your dialing prefix. The valid characters are the numbers 0–9, the letters P and W (uppercase and lowercase), and the characters pound (#) and star (*). If you are using the fax software to enter the dial prefix, then you may also include the characters minus and comma.

Notes:

- Some of these characters may not be available, depending on the printer you purchased.
- Characters may vary depending on whether you are using the printer control panel or the computer keyboard.

When do I need to set Auto Answer to On?

Auto Answer is set to On by default, which lets the printer receive faxes automatically.

If the printer is connected to the same telephone line with an answering machine, then you must set Auto Answer to On so that you can receive both your voice calls and your faxes. Make sure that the answering machine is set to pick up on fewer rings than the rings set in the printer. This lets the other devices pick up the voice calls first. If an incoming call is a fax, the printer can detect fax signals on the line and takes the call.

How many rings should I set?

If the printer is sharing a line with an answering machine, then set the printer to pick up after a greater number of rings than the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call.

If the printer is on a dedicated fax line, then you may set the printer to pick up on any number of rings that you want.

How do I set the distinctive ring for the printer?

Setting the correct ring is important if you subscribe to the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) feature offered by telephone companies. This feature allows you to have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number has a designated ring pattern (All Rings, Single Ring Only, Double Ring Only, Triple Ring Only, Single or Double Rings Only, Single or Triple Rings Only, Double or Triple Rings Only). The different ring patterns let you know what telephone number was dialed, and what device you should use to answer the call.

Assign one of your telephone numbers to the printer as the fax number, and then set the printer to answer the ring pattern of that number. If the pattern is set incorrectly, then the printer rings, but it never receives the fax.

Distinctive Ring is also called Ident-a-Call, Smart Ring, Teen Ring, RingMaster, or IdentaRing.

- **1** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > > Fax Setup > > Ringing and Answering > > Ring Pattern > ○
- 2 Press the arrow buttons to scroll to the ring pattern you want, and then press ox.

How can I check the dial tone?

A dial tone lets you know if the telephone line is working or if the printer is properly connected to the telephone line. If you encounter problems sending and receiving faxes, then make sure you can hear a dial tone on the line and through the printer.

Make sure the telephone line and the wall jack are working

- 1 Plug an analog telephone into the wall jack.
- 2 Listen for a dial tone through the telephone handset.

If you hear a dial tone, then the telephone line and the wall jack are working.

If you do not hear a dial tone, plug the analog telephone into a second wall jack, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the telephone line is working but the first wall jack is not working.

Make sure the printer is connected properly to the telephone line

- **1** While the printer is connected to a telephone line through the printer on the back of the printer, plug an analog telephone into the printer.
- 2 Listen for a dial tone.

If you hear a dial tone, then the telephone line is working and properly connected to the printer.

If you do not hear a dial tone through both the wall jack and the printer, then see the "Fax troubleshooting checklist" on page 149.

How do I adjust the speaker volume on the printer?

Listen to the dial tone to check if the telephone line is working and to check if the cables and devices are connected properly in your telephone network. If you set the printer to receive faxes manually, then make sure that you set the ringer volume loud enough for you to hear it.

Adjusting the dialing volume

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup >

 → > Fax Setup >

 → > Dialing and Sending >

 → > Speaker Volume >

 →
- Press the up or down arrow buttons to select a dial volume setting, and then press

Adjusting the ringer volume

- **1** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - A > Setup > OK > Fax Setup > OK > Ringing and Answering > OK > Ringer Volume > OK
- 2 Press the up or down arrow buttons to select a ringer volume setting, and then press ok.

How can I make sure that fax calls go to the printer and voice calls go to the answering machine?

To make sure the printer picks up incoming faxes, set Auto Answer to On, and then set the printer to pick up after a greater number of rings than the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call.

What settings work best with voice mail service?

Voice mail and fax can share the same telephone line if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service offered by your telephone company. This feature allows you to have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number has a designated ring pattern (All Rings, Single Ring Only, Double Ring Only, Triple Ring Only, Single or Double Rings Only, Single or Triple Rings Only, Double or Triple Rings Only). The different ring patterns let you know which telephone number was dialed, and which device you should use to answer the call.

If you do not have distinctive ring service, then set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off). This setting lets you receive both voice calls and fax calls, but works best if you use voice mail more often. You need to turn off voice mail whenever you are expecting a fax.

How do I change the resolution of the documents that I fax?

The resolution, or fax quality, of the documents that you send may affect fax transmission. The receiving fax machine may not support high resolutions and may not be able to receive your fax. You can fix this by enabling Auto Fax Conversion, but the automatic conversion may result in an unreadable fax, especially if the original document is already blurred.

Choose a fax quality that best suits the capacity of the receiving fax machine and the quality of the original document.

Quality	Black resolution	Color resolution
Standard	200 x 100	200 x 200
Fine	200 x 200	200 x 200
Superfine	300 x 300	200 x 200
Ultrafine	300 x 300 (half-toned)	200 x 200

When sending a fax, after entering the fax number, press the arrow buttons to select a fax quality, and then press or.

How do I send a fax at a scheduled time?

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



- 2 Enter the fax number of the recipient, or press **Address Book** to select a number from the Speed Dial or Group Dial list.
- 3 Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Schedule Fax.

- 4 Enter the time you want to send the fax, and then press or
- **5** Press \diamondsuit to start scanning the document and to save the scheduled fax.

The printer sends the fax at the designated time. Do *not* turn off the printer or unplug it from the telephone line before the scheduled time.

How do I send a fax using a phone calling card?

1 Press Dial tone.

You should hear the dial tone of the telephone line.

- 2 Enter the calling card information, and then when you are connected to the telephone carrier, follow the prompts.
- **3** When prompted, enter the fax number of the recipient, and then press \diamondsuit .

How do I know that the fax was sent successfully?

You can set the printer to print a confirmation page, or transmission report, every time you send a fax. This report includes the date and time that the fax was sent. If the fax job is unsuccessful, then the report also includes the cause of the error.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **2** Press the arrow buttons to select a report printing option:
 - If you want to print a report every time you send a fax, then select **Print Log**.
 - If you do not want to print the report, then select **Do not print log**.
 - If you want to save on ink and print a report only when a fax job is unsuccessful, then select **Print only for error**.
- 3 Press OK.

How do I view the fax history of the printer?

You can view the fax history of the printer on the display. You can also print reports of sent or received faxes, or both. From the printer control panel, navigate to:

☆ > Setup > OK > Fax Setup > OK > Reports > OK > Fax History > OK

How do I print a fax on both sides of the paper?

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → Setup > OK > Fax Setup > OK > 2-Sided Faxes > OK
- **2** Press the arrow buttons to select a setting:
 - Never—Incoming faxes are never printed on both sides of the paper regardless of the 2-sided button setting.
 - Always—Incoming faxes are always printed on both sides of the paper regardless of the 2-sided button setting.
- 3 Press OK.

How do I forward a fax?

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

- 2 Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Forward or Print & Forward, and then press ok.
- 3 Using the keypad, enter the number to which you want to forward the fax, and then press ok.

When you enable this option, all the faxes that you receive are automatically forwarded until you disable it.

To disable fax forwarding, return to the Fax Forward menu, and then select Off.

Can I block faxes?

You can block faxes from specific numbers. You can also block junk faxes and faxes from unidentified senders (senders without a Caller ID). This feature is helpful if you want to receive faxes automatically but want to filter the faxes that you receive.

1 Turn on fax blocking.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
    Setup > ○K > Fax Setup > ○K > Fax Blocking > ○K > Turn On/Off > ○K > On > ○K
```

- **2** Add a number to block.
 - a Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Add, and then press ok.
 - **b** Use the keypad to enter the name of the person you want to block.
 - c Press the down arrow button to move the cursor to the Number field.
 - **d** Use the keypad to enter the fax number, and then press or .
 - **e** Repeat steps 2b through 2d until you have added all the numbers that you want to block. You can block up to 50 numbers.
- **3** Block unidentified faxes (faxes without a Caller ID number).
 - a Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Block No ID, and then press ok.
 - **b** Press the arrow buttons to scroll to On, and then press or to save the setting.

Can I retrieve failed faxes?

The printer saves an incoming fax to the printer memory before it prints the fax. If the printer runs out of ink or runs out of paper, then you can print the fax later after the error is resolved.

However, you cannot retrieve a failed fax if the failure is due to power loss. In this case, the printer automatically prints an error report the next time it is turned on. For incoming faxes, the error report lets you know who sent the fax and how many pages were not printed. For outgoing faxes, it lets you know how many pages were not sent.

Networking

Installing the printer on a wireless network

Wireless network compatibility

Your printer contains an IEEE 802.11n wireless print server. Your printer is compatible with IEEE 802.11 b/g/n routers that are Wi-Fi certified.

Supported network security options

The printer supports three wireless security options: WPA2/WPA, WEP, and no security.

WPA2/WPA

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access) and WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2) offer stronger wireless network security than WEP. WPA2 and WPA are similar types of security. WPA2 uses a more complex encryption method and is more secure than WPA. Both WPA2 and WPA use a series of characters, called the WPA pre-shared key or passphrase, to protect wireless networks from unauthorized access.

WPA2/WPA passphrases must be:

- Exactly 64 hexadecimal characters. Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.
- From 8 to 63 ASCII characters. ASCII characters are letters, numbers, punctuation, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WPA passphrase are case-sensitive.

Every device on the wireless network must use the same WPA passphrase. WPA security is an option only on infrastructure networks with access points (wireless routers) and network cards that support WPA. Most newer wireless network equipment also offer WPA2 security as an option.

Note: If your network uses WPA2 or WPA security, then select **WPA Personal** when you are prompted to select the type of security your network uses.

WEP

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is the most basic and the weakest type of wireless security. WEP security relies on a series of characters called the WEP key.

Every device on the wireless network must use the same WEP key. WEP security can be used on both ad hoc and infrastructure networks.

A valid WEP key has:

- Exactly 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters. Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.
- Exactly 5 or 13 ASCII characters. ASCII characters are letters, numbers, punctuation, and symbols found on a keyboard.

No Security

It is not recommended to use no security at all on a home wireless network. Using no security means that anyone within range of your wireless network can use your network resources—including Internet access— if your wireless network is connected to the Internet. The range of your wireless network may extend far beyond the walls of your home, allowing access to your network from the street or from your neighbors' homes.

Printing a network setup page

A *network setup page* lists the configuration settings of the printer, including the IP address and MAC address of the printer.

- 1 Load plain paper.
- **2** From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
    Setup > ○K > Network Setup > ○K > Wireless 802.11 b/g/n > ○K > Network Connection Setup > ○K > Reports > ○K > Print Setup Page > ○K
```

Information you will need to set up the printer on a wireless network

To set up the printer for wireless printing, you need to know:

- The name of your wireless network, which is also known as the SSID (Service Set Identifier)
- If encryption was used to secure your network
- The security key (either a WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase)

To find the WPA/WPA2 passphrase for the wireless network, see the documentation that came with the access point, see the Web page associated with the access point, or consult your system support person.

If your access point is using WEP security, then the WEP key should be:

- Exactly 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters
 - or
- Exactly 5 or 13 ASCII characters

If your access point is using WPA or WPA2 security, then the WPA/WPA2 passphrase should be:

- Exactly 64 hexadecimal characters
 - or
- From 8 to 63 ASCII characters

Notes:

- Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.
- ASCII characters are letters, numbers, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WPA/WPA2
 passphrase are case-sensitive.

If your wireless network is not using security, then you will not have a security key.

Note: If you do not know the SSID of the network that your computer is connected to, then launch the wireless utility of the computer network adapter and look for the network name. If you cannot find the SSID or the security information for your network, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact your system support person.

Information you will need during advanced wireless setup

The Wireless Setup Utility does not detect the wireless network SSID for you during advanced wireless setup. You must know the following information before configuring the wireless printer settings manually:

Wireless Mode

Check your wireless network type:

Infrastructure—All devices on a wireless network communicate with each other through an access point (wireless router).

Ad-Hoc—Network devices communicate directly with each other without the use of centralized security or access point. Ad hoc mode may be available in select models or operating systems only.

Note: Infrastructure is the recommended network configuration because of its faster transfer speeds, better security options, and ease of configuration.

Network Name (SSID)

This is the identifying name that distinguishes a network from other networks in the area.

Channel

Auto is selected by default and cannot be changed if the network is configured in infrastructure mode.

Notes:

- Ad hoc mode may be available in select models or operating systems only.
- If the network is set up in ad hoc mode, then select the channel that other devices in the network are using.
 All devices in an ad hoc network must use the same channel to communicate with each other.
- The printer can communicate on only one wireless network at a time. Configuring the printer for an ad hoc wireless network will keep it from working on any other wireless network, either ad hoc or infrastructure.

Authentication

Determine if you have an infrastructure or ad hoc setup, and then check the corresponding authentication type.

Note: Some authentication types may be available in select models or operating systems only.

Wireless mode	Authentication type
Infrastructure	Open Mode
	Shared Mode
	WPA Personal
	WPA2-Personal
	WPA2-Enterprise
	• 802.1X - RADIUS
Ad hoc	Open Mode

Encryption

Check the encryption method used on your network.

Note: Some authentication types may be available in select models or operating systems only.

Authentication type	Encryption method
Open Mode	• None
	• WEP
Shared Mode	WEP
WPA Personal	TKIP
WPA2-Personal	• TKIP
	• AES
WPA2-Enterprise	• TKIP
	• AES
802.1X - RADIUS	• None
	WEP-DynamicKeys
	 WEP-StaticKeys
	• WPA-TKIP
	• WPA-AES

Installing the printer on a wireless network

Before you install the printer on a wireless network, make sure that:

- Your wireless network is set up and working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Select **Wireless connection** when prompted to select a connection type.

For Macintosh users

- **1** Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.

3 Double-click the software installer package, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Select **Wireless connection** when prompted to select a connection type.

Installing the printer on other computers

Once the printer is set up on the wireless network, it can be accessed wirelessly by any other computer on the network. However, you will need to install the printer driver on every computer that will access it. You do not need to configure the printer again, although you will need to run the setup software on each computer to install the driver.

For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click 1, or click Start and then click Run.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen for installing a configured printer on a new computer.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

 If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.
- **3** Double-click the software installer package.
- 4 Select My printer is already set up. I am installing it on a new computer.
- **5** Click **Continue**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen for installing a configured printer on a new computer.

Determining the printer status using the network indicator light

The Wi-Fi or Ethernet indicator light shows the network status of the printer.

Notes:

- The network indicator light is located on the printer control panel. The printer may have Ethernet and/or wireless indicator light(s), depending on your printer model. To find out if your printer has Ethernet and/or wireless capability, see the *Quick Reference Guide*, or contact your system support person.
- The printer supports one local (USB) connection and one network connection (Ethernet or wireless) at a time. It is not possible to use both Ethernet and wireless at the same time.

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is turned off or is powering up.
	 The printer is not connected to an Ethernet or a wireless network and is in Sleep mode.
	 The printer has not been configured for an Ethernet or a wireless network.
	• The printer is configured for an ad hoc connection, but it is not currently communicating with another ad hoc device.

Indicator light	Printer status	
Blinking green	The printer is out of the range of the access point (wireless router).	
	• The printer is trying to communicate with the access point, but the access point is turned off or is not working properly.	
	• The access point has been turned off and back on, and the printer is trying to establish connection with the network.	
	The wireless settings of the printer may no longer be valid.	
	Check if the SSID, WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase, security type, and IP address that the printer uses are still correct.	
Solid green	The printer is connected to an Ethernet or a wireless network and is ready for use.	
	The printer is connected to your computer or mobile device through an ad hoc connection.	

Special wireless installation instructions

The following instructions apply to customers outside of North America who are using a wireless broadband box. Some examples of these boxes include LiveBox, AliceBox, N9UF Box, Freebox, and Club Internet.

Before you begin

- Make sure your box is wireless-enabled and activated to work on a wireless network. For more information about configuring the box to work wirelessly, see the documentation that came with your box.
- Make sure your box is turned on and that your computer is on and connected to your wireless network.

Adding the printer to your wireless network

- 1 Set up your printer for wireless networking using the setup instructions provided. Stop when you are prompted to select a network.
- 2 If there is an association/registration button on the back of your box, then press it before selecting a network.

Note: After pressing the association/registration button, you have five minutes to complete the printer installation.

3 Return to the computer screen.

From the wireless networks list that appears, select your network, and then click Continue.

If your wireless network does not appear in the list, then:

a Connect to another wireless network.

For Windows users

Click Unlisted Network.

For Macintosh users

Select Other Wireless Network from the list, and then click Continue.

b Enter the details about your wireless network.

Note: Your WEP, WPA, or WPA2 key may be obtained from the bottom of the box, the documentation that came with the box, or from the box Web page. If you have already changed the key for your wireless network, then use the key you created.

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen to complete the installation.

Assigning a static IP address

The printer will be assigned an IP address automatically through DHCP on most wireless networks.

- 1 Complete the wireless setup, allowing the printer to receive a DHCP address from a DHCP server on the network.
- 2 Print a network setup page to see the IP address currently assigned to the printer.
- **3** Open a Web browser and then type the printer IP address in the address field. Press **Enter**.
 - Note: If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the printer Web page correctly.
- 4 Click Configuration > TCP/IP > Set static IP address.
- 5 In the Address field, type the IP address you want to assign to the printer, and then click Submit.

To verify, type the static IP address in the Web browser address field, and then press Enter.

For more information, contact your system support person.

Changing wireless settings after installation

To change wireless settings on the printer, such as the configured network and the security key, do the following:

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Settings tab > Wireless setup utility

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Applications folder in the Finder, or from the Finder desktop, double-click the printer folder.
- 2 Double-click Wireless Setup Assistant.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Advanced wireless setup

Creating an ad hoc wireless network

You can set up an ad hoc network if you:

- Do not have an access point or wireless router.
- Do not have a wireless network (but do have a wireless network adapter for your computer).
- Want to set up a standalone network between the printer and a computer with a wireless network adapter.

Notes:

• Before you begin, make sure your wireless network adapter is properly attached to your computer and is working.

- The recommended way to set up your wireless network is to use an access point (wireless router). This network setup is called *infrastructure network*.
- If your computer has *My WiFi* or *Wi-Fi Direct*, then you can create direct connections to your wireless printer. For more information, see the documentation that came with your computer.
- The printer can communicate on only one wireless network at a time. Configuring the printer for an ad hoc wireless network will keep it from working on any other wireless network, either ad hoc or infrastructure.

In Windows Vista or later

- 1 Click **2** > Control Panel > Network and Internet > Network and Sharing Center.
- 2 Click Set up a connection or network > Set up a wireless ad-hoc (computer-to-computer) network > Next.
- **3** Follow the instructions for setting up a wireless ad hoc network.

As part of the setup:

- a Create a network name or SSID for the network between the computer and your printer.
- **b** Write down the name of your network. Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.
- **c** From the Security Type list, select **WEP** or **WPA2-Personal**, and then create a WEP key or WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key/passphrase.

WEP keys must be:

- Exactly 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters or
- Exactly 5 or 13 ASCII characters

WPA/WPA2 pre-shared keys/passphrases must be:

- Exactly 64 hexadecimal characters or
- From 8 to 63 ASCII characters

Notes:

- Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.
- ASCII characters are letters, numbers, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key/passphrase are case-sensitive.
- **d** Write down the password for your network. Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.

Windows Vista will enable the ad hoc network for you. It will appear in the "Connect to a network" dialog under "Available networks," indicating that the computer is configured for the ad hoc network.

- 4 Close the Windows Control Panel and any remaining windows.
- 5 Insert the installation software CD, and then follow the directions for wireless installation.

Note: Do not connect the installation or network cables until instructed to do so by the setup software.

6 When the available networks are displayed, provide the network name and the security information you created. The installer will configure the printer for use with your computer.

7 Store a copy of your network name and security information in a safe place for future reference.

Note: You may need to reconnect Windows Vista computers to the ad hoc network after restarting.

In Windows XP

- 1 Click Start > Control Panel > Network and Internet Connections > Network Connections.
- **2** Right-click the icon for your wireless network connection.
- **3** Click **Enable**, if it appears in the pop-up menu.

Note: If Disable appears, then your wireless connection is already enabled.

- 4 Right-click the Wireless Network Connection icon.
- 5 Click Properties > Wireless Networks tab.

Note: If the Wireless Networks tab does not appear, then your computer has third-party software that controls your wireless settings. You must use that software to set up the ad hoc wireless network. For more information, see the documentation for the third-party software.

- 6 Select the Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings check box.
- 7 Under Preferred Networks, delete any existing networks.
 Select a network, and then click **Remove** to delete the network from the list.
- 8 Click Add to create an ad hoc network.
- 9 In the Network Name (SSID) box, type the name you want to give your wireless network.
- **10** Write down the network name you chose so you can refer to it when running the wireless setup. Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.
- **11** If Network Authentication appears in the list, then select **Open**.
- 12 In the "Data encryption" list, select WEP.
- **13** If necessary, clear the "The key is provided for me automatically" check box.
- **14** In the Network Key box, type a WEP key.
- **15** Write down the WEP key you chose so you can refer to it when running the wireless setup. Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.
- 16 In the "Confirm network key" box, type the same WEP key.
- 17 Select This is a computer-to-computer (ad hoc) network; wireless access points are not used.
- **18** Click **OK** twice to close the two open windows.
- 19 It may take a few minutes for your computer to recognize the new settings. To check the status of your network:
 - a Right-click the Wireless Network Connections icon.
 - **b** Select View Available Wireless Networks.
 - If the network is listed but the computer is not connected, then select the ad hoc network, and then click **Connect**.
 - If the network does not appear, wait a moment, and then click Refresh network list.

20 Insert the installation software CD, and then follow the directions for wireless installation.

Note: Do *not* connect the installation or network cables until instructed to do so by the setup software.

21 When the available networks are displayed, provide the network name and the security information you created. The installer will configure the printer for use with your computer.

22 Store a copy of your network name and security information in a safe place for future reference.

For Macintosh users

1 Access the Airport settings:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort

- 2 From the Network Name or Network menu, click Create Network.
- **3** Create a name for the ad hoc network, and then click **OK**.

Note: Store the network name and password in a safe place for future reference.

Adding a printer to an existing ad hoc wireless network

Note: The printer can communicate on only one wireless network at a time. Configuring the printer for an ad hoc wireless network will remove it from any other wireless network, either ad hoc or infrastructure, for which it is configured.

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Settings tab > Wireless setup utility

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Windows Vista computers may need to be reconnected to the ad hoc network after restarting.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Applications folder in the Finder, or from the Finder desktop, double-click the printer folder.
- 2 Double-click Wireless Setup Assistant.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Configuring the printer wirelessly using WPS (Windows only)

With *Wi-Fi Protected Setup* (WPS), it is easy to add computers or printers to your wireless network because the SSID and WPA passphrase are automatically detected and configured for you.

- 1 Make sure your access point (wireless router) supports WPS.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD and follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Notes:

- If you are using the PIN method to add your printer using WPS, then make sure you type all eight digits when you are asked to enter your PIN.
- To use WPS to configure the printer wirelessly, all of the devices on your wireless network must support WPS. If any device on your network does not support WPS, then you must type the SSID and security information when prompted.

Configuring Wi-Fi Protected Setup manually

Note: Make sure your access point (wireless router) is Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) certified. For more information, see the *User's Guide*.

If your printer or device has not yet been configured for wireless connection and you want to configure it using WPS, then push the WPS button on the wireless router. Wait for the printer control panel to display a message to begin WPS configuration. There might be a short delay before the message appears. If nothing happens after 30 seconds, then do one of the following:

Use the Push Button Configuration (PBC) method

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
    Setup > ○ Network Setup > ○ Wireless 802.11b/g/n > ○ Network Connection Setup > ○ Wireless > ○ Network Connection Setup > ○ Wireless > ○ Network Connection Setup > ○ Network Connect
```

2 Follow the instructions on the printer display.

Use the Personal Identification Number (PIN) method

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
    Setup > ok > Network Setup > ok > Wireless 802.11b/g/n > ok > Network Connection Setup > ok > Wireless > ok > Wi-Fi Protected Setup > ok > WPS PIN Mode > ok > wi-Fi Protected Setup > ok > wi-Fi Protected Setup
```

2 Follow the instructions on the printer display.

Switching between USB, Ethernet, and wireless connections (Windows only)

You can change the way you access your printer, depending on your needs. The following procedures assume that you have configured your printer for one type of connection and that the printer drivers are installed on the computer. See related topics on troubleshooting specific connection types if you encounter difficulties during configuration.

Note: The printer supports one active local connection (USB) and one active network connection (Ethernet or wireless) at a time. It is not possible to connect the printer to both Ethernet and wireless networks at the same time.

Using the printer wirelessly

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up locally (using USB connection)

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Settings tab > Wireless setup utility

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: There is no need to remove the USB cable connecting the printer to the computer during wireless configuration.

If the printer is currently set up for Ethernet

- 1 Unplug the Ethernet cable from the printer.
- 2 Place the printer close to the computer you want to use to configure the printer for wireless access.

Note: You will need to connect the printer to the computer with a USB cable. Make sure the printer is close enough to the computer for your USB cable to reach both.

- 3 Click or Start.
- 4 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 5 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > Settings tab > Wireless setup utility

6 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Using the printer locally (USB)

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up for Ethernet

- **1** Attach a USB cable to the computer and to the printer.
- **2** Wait a moment for Windows to locate the driver and finish setting up the printer.
- **3** Select the USB printer. See "Selecting the printer" on page 108.

If the printer is currently set up for wireless

- **1** Attach a USB cable to the computer and to the printer.
- **2** Wait a moment for Windows to locate the driver and finish setting up the printer.
- **3** Select the USB printer. See "Selecting the printer" on page 108.

Note: You can continue to use the printer through Ethernet or wireless connection.

Using the printer over an Ethernet network

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up for wireless

- 1 Plug an Ethernet cable into the printer and into an available port on a switch or wall jack.
- 2 Wait one minute for the Ethernet network adapter to become active and acquire an IP address from the network.
- **3** Select the Network printer. See "Selecting the printer" on page 108.

Note: The wireless adapter of the printer is disabled while it is connected to an Ethernet network.

If the printer is currently set up locally (using USB connection)

- 1 Plug an Ethernet cable into the printer and into an available port on a switch or wall jack.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD into the computer you want to use to configure the printer.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen for configuring a printer on an Ethernet network.
- **4** Select the Network printer. See "Selecting the printer" on page 108.

Note: You will need a USB cable to complete the configuration.

Selecting the printer

- 1 Open the printers folder.
 - a Click or Start.
 - **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
 - c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **2** Right-click the printer you want to use (Network or USB).
- 3 Select Set as Default Printer from the menu.
- 4 Close the "Printers" or "Printers and Faxes" window.

Switching between USB, Ethernet, and wireless connections (Macintosh only)

You can change the way you access your printer depending on your needs. The following procedures assume that you have configured your printer for one type of connection and that the drivers are installed on the computer. See related topics on troubleshooting specific connection types if you encounter difficulties during configuration.

Note: The printer supports one active local connection (USB) and one active network connection (Ethernet or wireless) at a time. It is not possible to connect the printer to both Ethernet and wireless networks at the same time.

Using the printer wirelessly

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up locally (using USB connection)

- 1 Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

 If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.
- 3 Double-click Lexmark Extras > Lexmark Setup Assistant.
- **4** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: There is no need to remove the USB cable connecting the printer to the computer during wireless configuration.

If the printer is currently set up for Ethernet

- **1** Unplug the Ethernet cable from the printer.
- 2 Place the printer close to the computer you want to use to configure the printer for wireless access.

Note: You will need to connect the printer to the computer with a USB cable. Make sure the printer is close enough to the computer for your USB cable to reach both.

- **3** Close all open applications.
- 4 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.

- 5 Double-click Lexmark Extras > Lexmark Setup Assistant.
- **6** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- **7** A second print queue will be created. Remove the Ethernet queue if you do not want to switch back to accessing the printer over an Ethernet connection.

Using the printer locally (USB)

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up for Ethernet

- **1** Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.
- 2 Firmly plug the rectangular end of the USB cable into the USB port of the computer.
- **3** Add the printer. See "Adding the printer" on page 110.
- **4** A second print queue will be created. Remove the Ethernet queue if you do not want to switch back to accessing the printer over an Ethernet connection.

If the printer is currently set up for wireless

- **1** Attach a USB cable to the computer and to the printer.
- **2** Add the printer. See "Adding the printer" on page 110.
- **3** A second print queue will be created. Remove the wireless queue if you do not want to switch back to accessing the printer over a wireless connection.

Using the printer over an Ethernet network

Select the connection type that describes how you currently access your printer:

If the printer is currently set up for wireless

- 1 Plug an Ethernet cable into the printer and to an available port on a switch or wall jack.
- 2 Wait a minute for the Ethernet network adapter to become active and acquire an IP address from the network.
- **3** Add the printer. See "Adding the printer" on page 110.
- **4** A second print queue will be created. Remove the wireless queue if you do not want to switch back to accessing the printer over a wireless network.

If the printer is currently set up locally (using USB connection)

- 1 Plug an Ethernet cable into the printer and to an available port on a switch or wall jack.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD into the computer you want to use to configure the printer.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: You will need a USB cable to complete the configuration.

Adding the printer

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
 - System Preferences > Print & Fax
- 2 Click +.
- **3** Click the **Default** or **Default Browser** tab, and then select your printer.
- 4 Click Add.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- 1 From the Finder, choose Utilities.
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List dialog, choose the printer you want to use, and then click Add.
- **4** From the Printer Browser, select your printer, and then click **Add**.

Sharing a printer in a Windows environment

- **1** Prepare the computers to share the printer:
 - **a** Make all computers printing to the printer accessible through Network Neighborhood by enabling File and Print Sharing. See the Windows documentation for instructions on enabling File and Print Sharing.
 - **b** Install the printer software on all computers that will print to the printer.

- 2 Identify the printer:
 - a On the computer that is attached to the printer, open the printers folder:
 - 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
 - 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
 - 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
 - **b** Right-click the name of your printer.
 - c Click Sharing or Printer Properties.
 - **d** From the Sharing tab, select **Share this printer** or **Shared as**.
 - e Assign a distinctive name, and then click OK.
- **3** Locate the printer from the remote computer:

Note: The remote computer is the one that is not attached to the printer.

- a Open the printers folder:
 - 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
 - 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
 - 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
- **b** Right-click the name of your printer.
- c Click Properties or Printer properties.
- d Click Ports > Add Port > Local Port > New Port.
- **e** Type the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) Port Name, which consists of the server name and the distinctive printer name that was specified in step 2 on page 111. The name should be in the form \\server\printer.
- f Click OK.
- **g** Click **Close** on the Printer Ports dialog.
- **h** Make sure the new port is selected on the Ports tab, and then click **Apply**.
- i Click **OK**.

Sharing a printer in a Macintosh environment

- 1 From the Finder, choose Help > Mac Help.
- 2 In the Search field, type sharing the printer on a network, and then press return.
- **3** Select only *one* of the following:
 - Sharing your printer with Mac OS X users—Let other Macintosh computers on the network that use Mac OS X version 10.4 or later use any printer connected to your Macintosh computer.
 - **Sharing your printer with Windows users**—Let Windows computers on the network use any printer connected to your Macintosh computer.
- **4** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Windows users should see the Windows documentation for information on adding a network printer connected to a Macintosh computer.

Configuring security

Simple wireless networks require WEP keys or a WPA/WPA2 passphrase, or may not have any security at all. More-advanced wireless network security can require one or more certificates and an authentication server. If the network requires a certificate and you do not have it, fill out the certificate request form provided within the Wireless Setup Utility and follow your organization's procedures for requesting a certificate for network access.

Following is the list of supported types of wireless network security and their requirements.

WEP

- WEP key (up to four keys may be required)
- Default WEP Transmit Key (if more than one WEP key is configured, this specifies which one to use)

WPA Personal, WPA2-Personal or WPA2-Enterprise

- · Pre-shared key
- Encryption (AES or TKIP)

EAP-MD5, MSCHAPv2, or LEAP

- RADIUS user name
- RADIUS password

PEAP

- RADIUS user name
- RADIUS password
- CA certificate

EAP-TLS

- RADIUS user name
- RADIUS password
- CA certificate
- Signed certificate

EAP-TTLS

- appropriate inner authentication
- RADIUS user name
- RADIUS password
- CA certificate

Configuring 802.1X Authentication

The information you must complete is dependent on the 802.1X security mechanism you select. Some require user names, passwords, and/or certificates. If your network contains multiple access points with different modes of authentication, then you can select and configure more than one authentication mechanism.

- 1 From the Configure 802.1X Authentication dialog, type the user name and password for the authentication server.
- **2** Confirm the password, and then check the selected authentication mechanism.

If you have selected	Do this	
EAP-MD5, LEAP, or MSCHAPv2	Proceed to the next step.	
PEAP or EAP-TTLS	Click Install CA Certificate , and then type the path to the CA certificate, or click Browse to locate the certificate file.	
EAP-TLS	a Click Install Signed Certificate , and then type the path to the signed certificate, or click Browse to locate the certificate file.	
	b Click Install CA Certificate , and then type the path to the CA certificate, or click Browse to locate the certificate file.	

3 Click **OK**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Installing the printer on an Ethernet network

Information you will need to set up the printer on an Ethernet network

To configure your printer for an Ethernet network, organize the following information before you begin:

Note: If your network automatically assigns IP addresses to computers and printers, continue on to installing the printer.

- A valid, unique IP address for the printer to use on the network
- The network gateway
- The network mask
- A nickname for the printer (optional)

Note: A printer nickname can make it easier for you to identify your printer on the network. You can choose to use the default printer nickname, or assign a name that is easier for you to remember.

You will need an Ethernet cable to connect the printer to the network and an available port where the printer can physically connect to the network. Use a new network cable when possible to avoid potential problems caused by a damaged cable.

Installing the printer on an Ethernet network

Before you install the printer on an Ethernet network, make sure that:

- You have completed the initial setup of the printer.
- Your network is set up and working properly.
- Your computer is connected to your network.

For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click 1, or click Start and then click Run.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type D:\setup.exe, where D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Select **Ethernet connection** when prompted to select a connection type.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.
 If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.
- 3 Double-click the software installer package.
- 4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Select **Ethernet connection** when prompted to select a connection type.

Networking FAQ

What is Wi-Fi Protected Setup?

Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) is a simple and secure configuration that allows you to establish a wireless home network and enable network security without requiring prior knowledge of Wi-Fi technology. It is no longer necessary to configure the network name (SSID) and WEP key or WPA passphrase for network devices.

Note: WPS supports only networks that communicate through access points (wireless routers).

The printer supports the following methods in connecting to a wireless network:

- Personal Identification Number (PIN)—A PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.
- Push Button Configuration (PBC)—Buttons on both the printer and the access point are pushed within a given period of time.

Look for any of these identifier marks to check if your access point is WPS certified:







You can find these WPS logos on the side, back, or top of your access point.

For more information on accessing the wireless settings and determining the WPS capability of your access point, see the documentation that came with the access point or contact your system support person.

Where do I find my WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase?

- Contact your system support person.
 - The person who set up your network usually keeps the WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase.
 - If your wireless network was set up by your *Internet Service Provider* (ISP), then you might find the information in the documentation they provided.
- See the documentation that came with your access point (wireless router).
 If your access point is using the default settings, then you can find the information in the documentation.
- View the security settings on the access point.
 - 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address of the access point in the address field. Press Enter.

Notes:

- To obtain the IP address of the access point, see the documentation that came with it or contact your system support person.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.
- **2** Enter the user name and password for the access point when prompted.

Note: The WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase is not the same as the password for the access point. The password allows you to access the access point settings. The WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase allows printers and computers to join your wireless network.

3 Look for the WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase.

What is an SSID?

A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is the name that identifies a wireless network. All devices on the network must know the SSID of the wireless network, or they will not be able to communicate with each other. Usually, the wireless network broadcasts the SSID to allow wireless devices in the area to connect to it. Sometimes, the SSID is not broadcast for security reasons.

If the SSID of your wireless network is not broadcast, then it cannot be detected automatically and will not show up in the list of available wireless networks. You must enter the network information manually in this situation.

An SSID can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Alphanumeric characters are a combination of alphabetic (letters A to Z) and numeric (numbers 0 to 9) characters.

Where do I find my SSID?

computer, including your SSID.

- View the settings on the access point (wireless router).
 - Most access points have a built-in Web server that can be accessed using a Web browser.
- Check your computer to see if a program was installed with your wireless network adapter.
 Many network adapters provide a software application that allows you to view the wireless settings of your

If you are unable to locate your SSID using either of these methods, then contact your system support person.

What is a network?

A network is a collection of devices such as computers, printers, Ethernet hubs, access points, and routers connected together for communication through cables or through a wireless connection. A network can be wired, wireless, or designed to have both wired and wireless devices.

How do I find out what type of security my network is using?

• Contact your system support person.

The person who set up your network usually keeps your wireless information.

- See the documentation that came with your access point (wireless router).
- Check the characters of the password that you use to access your wireless network.

If you are not using a password, then choose None or No Security.

Characters	Security type
Exactly 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters	WEP
or	
Exactly 5 or 13 ASCII characters	
Exactly 64 hexadecimal characters	WPA or WPA2
or	
From 8 to 63 ASCII characters	

Notes:

- Hexadecimal characters are A-F, a-f, and 0-9.
- ASCII characters are letters, numbers, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WPA/WPA2
 passphrase are case-sensitive.
- View the security settings on the access point.
 - 1 Open a Web browser. Type the IP address of the access point in the address field, and then press Enter.

Notes:

- To obtain the IP address of the access point, see the documentation that came with it, or contact your system support person.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.
- **2** Enter the user name and password for the access point when prompted.

Note: The WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase is not the same as the password for the access point. The password allows you to access the access point settings. The WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase allows printers and computers to join your wireless network.

3 Look for the WEP key or WPA/WPA2 passphrase.

How are home networks configured?

For desktop computers, laptops, and printers to communicate with each other over a network, they must be connected by cables and/or have wireless network adapters built in or installed in them.

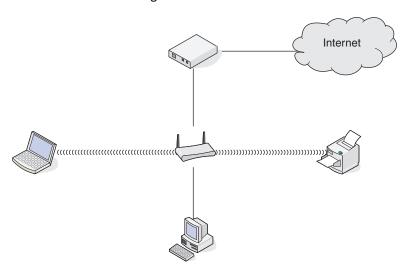
There are many different ways a network can be set up. Four common examples appear below.

Note: The printers in the following diagrams represent printers with internal print servers built into them so that they can communicate over a network.

Wireless network examples

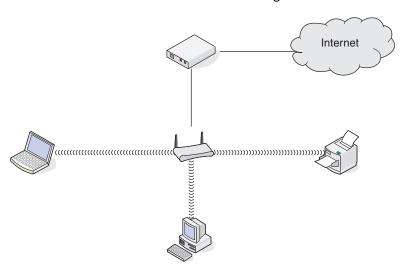
Scenario 1: Mixed wired and wireless connections on a network with Internet access

- All computers and printers connect to the network through a router with Ethernet and wireless capabilities.
- Some computers and printers connect wirelessly to the router; others connect over a wired connection.
- The network is connected to the Internet through a DSL or cable modem.



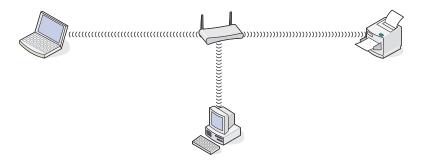
Scenario 2: Wireless network with Internet access

- All computers and printers connect to the network using a wireless access point or wireless router.
- The wireless access point connects the network to the Internet through a DSL or cable modem.



Scenario 3: Wireless network with no Internet access

- Computers and printers connect to the network using a wireless access point.
- The network has no connection to the Internet.



Scenario 4: Computer connected wirelessly to a printer without Internet access

- A computer is directly connected to a printer without going through a wireless router.
- This configuration is referred to as an ad hoc network.
- The network has no connection to the Internet.



Note: Most computers can connect to only one wireless network at a time. If you access the Internet over a wireless connection, you will lose Internet access if you are connected to an ad hoc network.

What is a USB cable?

A *Universal Serial Bus* (USB) cable is primarily used to connect a USB device to a host. Common hosts include computers and video game consoles. Through the USB port and cable, it is possible to connect computer peripherals such as mouse devices, keyboards, digital cameras, printers, personal media players, flash drives, and external hard drives. For many of those devices, USB has become the standard connection method.

Why do I need a USB cable?

When setting up the printer on your wireless network, the printer will need to temporarily connect to a computer using the USB cable. This temporary connection is used to set up the wireless settings of the printer.

How do I attach the USB cable?

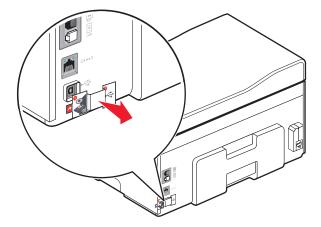
The USB cable attaches to a USB port on the computer and to the square connector on the back of the printer. This connection allows you to configure the printer for a network or local (USB) installation.

The USB port on the computer and on the printer are each marked with •••••.

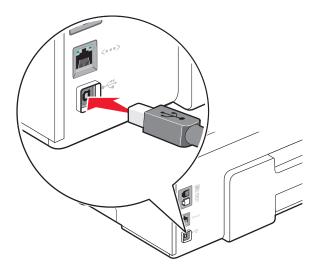


Note: Do not connect the USB cable until prompted to do.

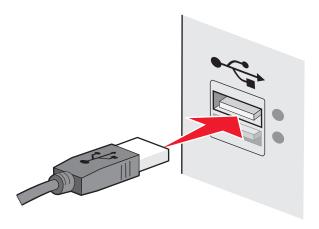
1 If the USB port at the back of the printer is covered by a sticker, then make sure to remove it.



2 Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.



3 Firmly plug the rectangular end of the USB cable into the USB port of the computer.



4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

How are infrastructure and ad hoc networks different?

Wireless networks can operate in one of two modes: infrastructure or ad hoc.

In *infrastructure* mode, all devices on a wireless network communicate with each other through an access point (wireless router).

In *ad hoc* mode, a computer with a wireless network adapter communicates directly with a printer equipped with a wireless print server.

	Infrastructure	Ad hoc		
Characteristics				
Communication	Through an access point	Directly between devices		
Security	More security options	WEP or no security		
Range	Determined by the range and number of access points	Restricted to the range of individual devices on the network		
Speed	Usually faster	Usually slower		
Requirements for all devices				
Unique IP address for each device	Yes	Yes		
Mode set to	Infrastructure mode	Ad hoc mode		
Same SSID	Yes, including the access point	Yes		
Same channel	Yes, including the access point	Yes		

We recommend setting up a network in infrastructure mode using the installation software CD. Infrastructure mode provides:

- Increased network security
- Increased reliability
- Faster performance
- Easier setup

Finding the signal strength

The signal strength tells you how strongly the computer or printer is receiving the wireless signal from the wireless network. Poor signal quality could affect connectivity during configuration.

Checking computer connectivity

- **1** From your computer system tray, click the wireless icon that corresponds to the software managing your wireless network adapter.
- **2** Check the signal quality.

Checking printer connectivity

- From the printer, print a network setup page.
 In the Wireless section, look for Quality.
- View the signal strength from the printer control panel.

Navigate to:

```
    Setup > ok > Network Setup > ok > Wireless 802.11 b/g/n > ok > Network Connection Setup > ok > Wireless > ok > View Signal Quality > ok
```

To improve signal quality, remove sources of interference or move wireless devices closer to the access point (wireless router).

How can I improve wireless signal strength?

A common reason wireless printers fail to communicate over a network is poor wireless signal quality. If the signal is too weak, too distorted, or blocked by an object, it cannot carry information between the access point and the printer. To determine if the printer is receiving a strong signal from the access point, print a network setup page. The Quality field indicates the relative strength of the wireless signal the printer is receiving. Drops in signal strength can be intermittent, however, and although the signal quality appears high, it may drop during certain conditions.

If you think signal strength is a problem between your access point (wireless router) and the printer, then try one or more of the following:

Notes:

- The solutions below are for infrastructure networks. If you are using an ad hoc network, then adjust the computer when the solution suggests adjusting the access point.
- Ad hoc networks have a much shorter range than infrastructure networks. Try moving the printer closer to the computer if they seem to have trouble communicating.

Move the printer closer to the access point

If the printer is too far away from the access point, then it will not be able to communicate with other devices on the network. For most indoor wireless networks, the maximum distance between the access point and the printer is approximately 100 feet (30 meters). This distance could be longer or shorter, depending upon the layout of the network and the limitations of the access point.

REMOVE OBSTACLES BETWEEN THE ACCESS POINT AND THE PRINTER

The wireless signal from your access point will pass through most objects. Most walls, floors, furniture, and other objects will not block the wireless signal. However, there are materials that are too dense for the signal to pass through, such as objects containing metal and concrete. Arrange your printer and access point so that the signal is not blocked by such objects.

REMOVE SOURCES OF INTERFERENCE

Other types of radio frequencies can cause problems with the wireless signal on your network, resulting to printing issues that seem to come and go.

- Turn off potential sources of interference where possible.
- Avoid using microwave ovens, cordless phones (but not cellular phones), baby monitors, almost any kitchen
 appliance, wireless surveillance equipment, or any appliance containing a motor when printing over your wireless
 network.
- If another wireless network is operating in the vicinity, then change the wireless channel on the access point.
- Do not place your access point on a printer or other electronic device. Such devices can also interfere with the wireless signal.

ARRANGE THE NETWORK TO REDUCE SIGNAL ABSORPTION

Even when the wireless signal is able to pass through an object, it is slightly weakened. If it passes through too many objects, then it can be significantly weakened. All objects absorb part of the wireless signal when it passes through them, and certain types of objects absorb enough to cause communications problems. Place your access point as high in the room as possible to avoid signal absorption.

How can I make sure my computer and printer are connected to the same wireless network?

If the printer is not on the same wireless network as the computer, then you will not be able to print wirelessly. The SSID of the printer must match the SSID of the computer, if the computer is already connected to the wireless network.

For Windows users

- 1 Obtain the SSID of the network that the computer is connected to:
 - a Type the IP address of your access point (wireless router) in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the access point:

- 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type cmd.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
- 4 Type ipconfig, and then press Enter. Check the Wireless Network Connection section:
 - The "Default Gateway" entry is typically the access point.
 - The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 192.168.2.134.
- **b** Type the user name and password of the router when prompted.
- c Click OK.
- **d** In the Wireless settings section, look for the SSID.
- e Write down the SSID.

Note: Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.

- 2 Obtain the SSID of the network that the printer is connected to:
 - **a** From the printer, print a network setup page.
 - **b** In the Wireless section, look for **SSID**.

3 Compare the SSID of the computer and SSID of the printer.

If the SSIDs are the same, then the computer and the printer are connected to the same wireless network.

If the SSIDs are not the same, then run the utility again to set up the printer on the wireless network used by the computer.

For Macintosh users with an AirPort base station

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

The SSID of the network that the computer is connected to is displayed in the Network Name menu.

2 Write down the SSID.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort

The SSID of the network that the computer is connected to is displayed in the Network menu.

2 Write down the SSID.

For Macintosh users with an access point

1 Type the IP address of the access point in the address field of your Web browser and continue to step 2.

If you do not know the IP address of the access point, then do the following:

a From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

- **b** Click **Advanced** or **Configure**.
- c Click TCP/IP.

The Router entry is typically the access point.

- 2 Type your user name and password when prompted, and then click **OK**.
- **3** In the Wireless settings section, look for the SSID.
- **4** Write down the SSID, security type, and the WEP key/WPA passphrase (if shown).

Notes:

- Make sure you copy the network information down exactly, including any capital letters.
- Store the SSID and the WEP key or WPA passphrase in a safe place for future reference.

Can I use my printer on a USB and a network connection at the same time?

Yes, the printer supports a simultaneous USB and network connection. The printer can be configured in the following ways:

- Locally attached (connected to a computer using a USB cable)
- Wireless network
- Wireless network and locally attached simultaneously

What is a MAC address?

A Media Access Control (MAC) address is a 48-bit identifier associated with the hardware of network equipment. The MAC address may also be called the physical address because it is connected to the hardware of a device instead of its software. The MAC address is displayed as a hexadecimal number in this format: 01-23-45-67-89-AB.

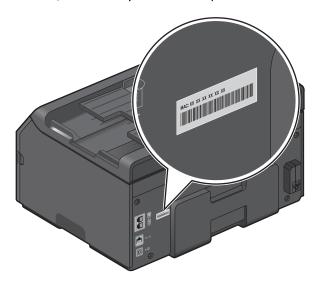
While it is possible to change the MAC address of a network device, it is not common practice to do so. For this reason, MAC addresses are considered permanent. IP addresses are easily changed, so MAC addresses are a more reliable method of identifying a specific device on a network.

Routers with security capabilities may allow filtering of MAC addresses on networks. This allows a managed list of devices to access the network, identified by their MAC addresses, as well as prevent access from unwanted devices. If your network uses MAC address filtering, then be sure to add the MAC address of the printer to the list of allowed devices.

How do I find the MAC address?

Network devices have a unique hardware identification number to distinguish them from other devices on the network. This is called the *MAC* (Media Access Control) address. Other devices sometimes use a type of MAC address called *Universally Administered Address* (UAA).

When installing the printer on a network, make sure you select the printer with the correct MAC address.



The MAC address of the internal print server is a series of letters and numbers.



Notes:

- A list of MAC addresses can be set on an access point (wireless router) so that only devices with matching MAC addresses are allowed to operate on the network. This is called MAC filtering. If MAC filtering is enabled in your access point and you want to add a printer to your network, then the MAC address of the printer must be included in the MAC filter list.
- If you are using an AirPort base station, then the MAC address may be referred to as AirPort ID, and MAC address filtering may be accessed through MAC Address Access Control.

What is an IP address?

An IP address is a unique number used by devices (such as a wireless printer, computer, or wireless access point) on an IP network to locate and communicate with each other. Devices on an IP network can communicate with each other only if they have unique and valid IP addresses. A unique IP address means no two devices on the same network have the same IP address.

An IP address is a group of four numbers separated by periods. An example of an IP address is 192.168.100.110.

What is TCP/IP?

Networks are able to function when computers, printers, and other devices are able to send data to each other, either through cables or wireless signals. This transfer of data is made possible by sets of data transmission rules called *protocols*. A protocol can be thought of as a language that has rules so that participants can effectively communicate with each other.

Different types of networks use different protocols, but *Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol* (TCP/IP) is the most popular. TCP/IP is used to send data over the Internet as well as over most corporate and home networks.

Every device on a network that uses TCP/IP must have an IP address. IP addresses are essentially unique computer names in a numeric format, used to transfer data around a network. IP addresses allow TCP/IP to confirm requests for, and receipt of, data by various devices on the network.

How do I locate IP addresses?

For Windows users

- 1 Click **4**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type cmd.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
- **4** Type **ipconfig**, and then press **Enter**.

 The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 192.168.0.100.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

About This Mac > More Info

- 2 From the Contents pane, choose Network.
- 3 If you are connected over a wireless network, then choose AirPort from the Active Services list.

Locating the printer IP address

- From the printer, print a network setup page.
 In the TCP/IP section, look for Address.
- View the printer settings.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

How are IP addresses assigned?

An IP address may be assigned automatically by the network using DHCP. Once the printer is set up on a computer, the computer sends all print jobs across the network to the printer using this address.

If the IP address is not automatically assigned, you will be asked during wireless setup to manually enter an address and other network information after selecting your printer from the available list.

What is a key index?

An access point (wireless router) can be configured with as many as four WEP keys. Only one key is used on the network at a time, however. The keys are numbered, and the number of a key is referred to as its key index. All devices on the wireless network must be configured to use the same key index when multiple WEP keys are configured on the access point.

Select the same key index on your printer as you are using on your access point.

What is the difference between Guided and Advanced setup?

Use Guided setup if:

- The printer and the computer communicate on the same wireless network.
- You want the Wireless Setup Utility to automatically detect the network for you.
- You want to connect your printer to the wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS).

Use Advanced setup if:

- The printer and the installing computer are not on the same wireless network, or if the computer does not have wireless access.
- The wireless network requires certificates.
- Enterprise-level security is employed on the wireless network.
- You know the network SSID and security information and want to enter the information on a single screen.
- The printer will be configured for a remote network.
- You know your network information and want to enter it quickly.
- You are configuring a printer for a wireless network that uses 802.1X authentication.

Maintaining the printer 127

Maintaining the printer

Maintaining ink cartridges

In addition to the following tasks that you can perform, your printer performs an automatic maintenance cycle every week if it is plugged into a properly grounded, working electrical outlet. It will briefly come out of Sleep mode or will temporarily turn on if it is turned off.

Checking ink levels

Using the printer control panel

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

> Setup > OK > Maintenance > OK > Check Ink Levels > OK

Using the printer software

For Windows users

- 1 Click or Start.
- 2 Click All Programs or Programs, and then select the printer program folder from the list.
- 3 Navigate to:

Printer Home > select your printer > **Maintenance** tab > **Supplies Status**

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax >** select your printer
- 2 Click Options & Supplies or Print Queue.
- 3 Click Supply Levels.

Aligning the printhead

If the characters or lines on your printed image appear jagged or wavy, then you may need to align the printhead.

- 1 Load plain paper.
- **2** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > ○K > Maintenance > ○K > Align Printer > ○K

An alignment page prints.

Note: Do not remove the alignment page until printing is finished.

If you aligned the cartridges to improve print quality, then print your document again. If print quality has not improved, then clean the printhead nozzles.

Maintaining the printer 128

Cleaning the printhead nozzles

If you have not been using the printer for a long period, then you may need to clean the printhead nozzles to improve the quality of your prints. Keep your printer plugged to a properly grounded, working electrical outlet to allow it to perform automatic maintenance cycles.

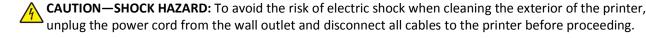
Notes:

- Cleaning the printhead nozzles uses ink, so clean them only when necessary.
- Deep cleaning uses more ink, so try the Clean Printhead option first to save ink.
- If the ink levels are too low, then you must replace the ink cartridges before you can clean the printhead nozzles.
- **1** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → > Setup > OK > Maintenance > OK
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to Clean Printhead or Deep Clean Printhead, and then press ox.
- 3 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to a cleaning option, and then press or.

 Wait until the printer is ready.

Cleaning the exterior of the printer

1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.



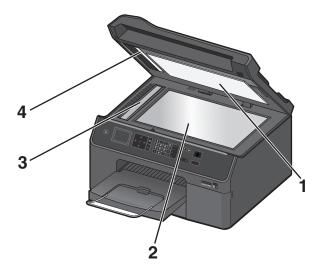
- **2** Remove all paper from the printer.
- **3** Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.
 - **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.
- 4 Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to remove any ink residue that has accumulated on the exit bin.
 - Warning—Potential Damage: Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.
- **5** Make sure the printer is dry before beginning a new print job.

Maintaining the printer 129

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass and other related parts when vertical streaks appear on your printed pages or when you see marks or smudges on such parts.

- 1 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.
- **2** Gently wipe clean the scanner glass and other related parts.



1	Backing material
2	Scanner glass
3	ADF scanner glass
4	ADF press plate

Note: Make sure all ink or corrective fluid on the document is dry before placing the document on the scanner glass.

Moving the printer to another location

When moving the printer and optional trays to another location, follow these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer. Any cart used to move the options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Make sure the bin extender and the exit bin are in their original positions.
- Keep the printer in an upright position to prevent the ink from leaking.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

Troubleshooting

Before you troubleshoot

Use this checklist to solve most printer problems:

- Make sure the power cord is plugged into the printer and into a properly grounded, working electrical outlet.
- Make sure the printer is turned on.
- Make sure the printer is securely connected to the computer, print server, or network access point.
- Check the printer for error messages, and resolve any errors.
- Check for paper jam messages, and clear any jams.
- Check the ink cartridges, and install new cartridges if necessary.
- Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold b for three seconds to turn off the printer.

If Troubleshooting does not solve your problem

Visit our Web site at http://support.lexmark.com to find the following:

- Knowledgebase articles with the latest information and troubleshooting for your printer
- Live online technical support
- Contact numbers for telephone technical support

Setup troubleshooting

- "Incorrect language appears on the display" on page 130
- "Software did not install" on page 131
- "Print job does not print or is missing pages" on page 131
- "Printer is printing blank pages" on page 133
- "Printer is busy or does not respond" on page 133
- "Cannot delete documents from the print queue" on page 134
- "Cannot print through USB" on page 134

Incorrect language appears on the display

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Change the language using the printer menus

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

- → Setup > OK > Device Setup > OK > Language > OK
- 2 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to the language you want, and then press ox.

3 To confirm the setting, press the left or right arrow button to scroll to Yes, and then press ok.

Software did not install

If you encountered problems while installing, or if your printer does not appear in the list in the printers folder or as a printer option when sending a print job, then try uninstalling and reinstalling the software.

Before you reinstall the software, do the following:

Make sure that your computer meets the minimum system requirements

Temporarily disable security programs in Windows before installing the software

CHECK THE USB CONNECTION

- 1 Check the USB cable for any obvious damage. If the cable is damaged, then use a new one.
- 2 Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.
- **3** Firmly plug the rectangular end of the USB cable into the USB port of the computer. The USB port is marked with •••••.

Note: If you continue to have problems, then try another USB port on the computer. You may have connected to a defective port.

RECONNECT THE PRINTER POWER SUPPLY

1 Turn off the printer.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold b for three seconds to turn off the printer.

- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then pull out the power cord from the power supply.
- **3** After one minute, reconnect the power cord into the power supply, and then plug the power cord into the wall outlet.
- **4** Turn on the printer.

Print job does not print or is missing pages

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure the ink cartridges are inserted correctly

- 1 Turn the printer on, and then open the ink cartridge access door.
- 2 Make sure the cartridges are inserted correctly.
 The cartridges should *click* firmly into their matching color slots.
- **3** Close the ink cartridge access door.

SELECT YOUR PRINTER FROM THE PRINT DIALOG BEFORE SENDING THE PRINT JOB

Note: This solution applies to Macintosh users only.

- 1 With a document open, choose File > Print.
- 2 From the printer pop-up menu, choose your printer, and then click Print.

If your printer does not appear on the Printer list, then choose **Add Printer**. From the list of printers in the Default tab, select your printer, and then click **Add**.

If your printer does not appear on the list, then try either of the following:

- For a USB-connected printer, remove and then reconnect the USB cable.
- For a printer that is wirelessly connected, see the Wireless troubleshooting section.

MAKE SURE THE PRINT JOB IS NOT PAUSED

Make sure your printer is set as the default printer

RECONNECT THE PRINTER POWER SUPPLY

1 Turn off the printer.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold b for three seconds to turn off the printer.

- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then pull out the power cord from the power supply.
- **3** After one minute, reconnect the power cord into the power supply, and then plug the power cord into the wall outlet.
- **4** Turn on the printer.

REMOVE AND RECONNECT THE USB CABLE CONNECTED TO YOUR PRINTER

CHECK THE USB CONNECTION

- 1 Check the USB cable for any obvious damage. If the cable is damaged, then use a new one.
- **2** Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.
- **3** Firmly plug the rectangular end of the USB cable into the USB port of the computer.

The USB port is marked with ◆←.

Note: If you continue to have problems, then try another USB port on the computer. You may have connected to a defective port.

REMOVE AND REINSTALL THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

Printer is printing blank pages

Blank pages may be caused by improperly installed ink cartridges.

REINSTALL THE INK CARTRIDGES AND DEEP CLEAN AND ALIGN THE PRINTHEAD

- **1** Reinstall the ink cartridges. For more information, see "Replacing ink cartridges" on page 14. The cartridges should *click* firmly into their matching color slots.
- 2 Load plain, unmarked paper.
- **3** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - ↑ > Setup > OK > Maintenance > OK > Deep Clean Printhead > OK
- 4 Press the up or down arrow button to scroll to a cleaning option, and then press or.

 Wait until the printer is ready.
- **5** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - → Setup > OK > Maintenance > OK > Align Printer > OK

An alignment page prints.

Note: Do *not* remove the alignment page until printing is finished.

Printer is busy or does not respond

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode

If the power light is blinking on and off slowly, then the printer is in Sleep mode. Press \circlearrowleft to wake up the printer.

If the printer will not come out of Sleep mode, then reset the power:

- 1 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then wait 10 seconds.
- 2 Insert the power cord into the wall outlet, and then turn on the printer.

If this problem persists, then check our Web site for updates for your printer software or firmware.

RECONNECT THE PRINTER POWER SUPPLY

1 Turn off the printer.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold b for three seconds to turn off the printer.

- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then pull out the power cord from the power supply.
- **3** After one minute, reconnect the power cord into the power supply, and then plug the power cord into the wall outlet.
- 4 Turn on the printer.

Cannot delete documents from the print queue

If you have jobs stuck in the print queue and cannot delete them to get other jobs to print, then the computer and printer may not be communicating.

RESTART THE COMPUTER AND TRY AGAIN

REMOVE AND RECONNECT THE USB CABLE CONNECTED TO YOUR PRINTER

Cannot print through USB

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE USB CONNECTION

- 1 Check the USB cable for any obvious damage. If the cable is damaged, then use a new one.
- **2** Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.
- **3** Firmly plug the rectangular end of the USB cable into the USB port of the computer. The USB port is marked with ••••.

Note: If you continue to have problems, then try another USB port on the computer. You may have connected to a defective port.

MAKE SURE THE USB PORT IS ENABLED IN WINDOWS

- 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type devmgmt.msc.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
 The Device Manager opens.
- **4** Click the plus sign (+) beside Universal Serial Bus controllers.

 If USB Host Controller and USB Root Hub are listed, then the USB port is enabled.

For more information, see the computer documentation.

REMOVE AND REINSTALL THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

Understanding printer messages

Alignment Problem

Try one or more of the following:

• Load plain, unmarked paper, and then realign the printhead.

Note: The printer will read any markings on used paper, which could cause the alignment error message to reappear.

• Press ok to retry, or press \bigotimes to clear the message.

Cannot Collate Job

Try one or more of the following:

- Press to continue printing the pages that were saved in the printer memory, and then collate the remainder of the print job.
- Press
 (x) to cancel the current print job.

Change [Paper Source] to [Size] Paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Press or to continue printing after loading the correct paper size and paper type in the default paper tray.
- Press
 (x) to cancel the current job.

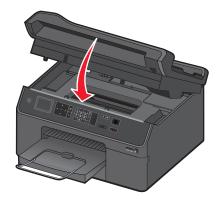
Change [Paper Source] to [Size] [Type] Paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Press or to continue printing after loading the correct paper size and paper type in the default paper tray.
- Press
 X to cancel the current job.

Close Printer

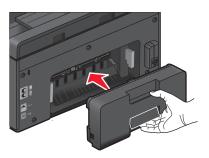
The printer is open. Close the printer to clear the message.



Duplex Unit Missing

Try one or more of the following:

• Make sure the duplex unit is properly installed at the back of the printer to clear the message.



• Cancel the current job.

Ink Cartridge Access Door Open

The ink cartridge access door is either open or detached.

- If the ink cartridge access door is open, then close it to clear the message.
- If the ink cartridge access door is detached, then reattach it to clear the message.
- 1 Insert the door hinges into place until they *click*. Make sure the door is inserted at a 90-degree position.



2 Close the ink cartridge access door to clear the message.

Ink Cartridge Error

The printer is unable to authenticate one or more of the installed ink cartridges. Try one or more of the following:

- Press to cancel the current job.
- Use only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges.
- Install the specified ink cartridges properly.
- Turn the printer off, then wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold 1 for three seconds to turn off the printer.

• See the *User's Guide* or visit the Lexmark Support Web site at http://support.lexmark.com for more information.

Ink Cartridge Missing

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified missing ink cartridge or cartridges.
- Reinsert the specified ink cartridge or cartridges.
- Press or \otimes to clear the message.
- See the *User's Guide* or visit the Lexmark Support Web site at http://support.lexmark.com for a list of supported ink cartridges.

Ink Cartridge Unsupported

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the unrecognized ink cartridge with one that is supported by your printer.
- Use only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges.
- Press or or or to clear the message.
- See the *User's Guide* or visit the Lexmark Support Web site at http://support.lexmark.com for a list of supported ink cartridges.

Ink Low

You may need to replace the specified ink cartridge soon. Try one or more of the following:

Press or (x) to clear the message and continue printing.

Note: Depending on your printer settings, you may not be allowed to continue printing until you replace the specified cartridge.

 See the User's Guide or visit the Lexmark Support Web site at http://support.lexmark.com for a list of supported ink cartridges.

Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray.
- Press ok to clear the message and continue printing.
- Press
 to cancel the current job.

Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray.
- Press or to clear the message and continue printing.
- Press \bigotimes to cancel the current job.

Memory Device Error

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the memory device, and then reinsert it into the card slot or USB port.
- Touch **OK** or press or to clear the message.

Network [x] Software Error

[x] is the number of the network connection.

Try one or more of the following:

- Press or to clear the message.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.

Out of Paper in Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray.
- Press \bigotimes to cancel the current job.

Paper Tray [x] Detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Press or to clear the message.
- Use the arrow buttons to select **Change Settings**, and then select the paper size and paper type of the media loaded. Press or for each selection.

Paper Tray [x] Removed

Do one or more of the following:

- Insert the specified paper tray into the printer.
- Press or to clear the message.

Printer Memory Full

Try one or more of the following:

• Depending on your printer model, touch **OK** or press or to clear the message, and then try printing again.

From the computer, adjust the printer settings to reduce the quality of the print job, and then try printing again.

Printhead Cannot Move

Try one or more of the following:

- Open the printer to remove any obstructions to the printhead, and then close the printer.
- Press ok to clear the message.

Printhead Error

There is a problem with the printhead. Contact technical support.

Printhead Warning

Clean or Deep Clean the printhead to restore print quality.

Notes:

- Cleaning the printhead nozzles uses ink, so clean them only when necessary.
- Deep cleaning uses more ink, so try the Clean Printhead option first to save ink.
- If the ink levels are too low, then you must replace the ink cartridges before you can clean the printhead nozzles.
- See the User's Guide for more information on how to clean the printhead nozzles.

Replace Ink Cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the ink cartridge with one that is supported by your printer.
- Press or to clear the message.
- See the *User's Guide* or visit the Lexmark Support Web site at http://support.lexmark.com for a list of supported ink cartridges.

Scanned Document Too Long

The scan job exceeds the maximum number of pages. Press 🛇 to clear the message and cancel the current scan job.

Scanner ADF Cover Open

Try one or more of the following:

- Close the ADF cover to clear the message.

Scanner Disabled

Try one or more of the following:

• Check the printer software settings or the Administration settings from the printer to enable the scanner. For more information, contact customer support.

• Press ok to clear the message.

Short Paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **OK** or press **OK**, depending on your printer model.
- Make sure the paper size is correctly set.
- Load paper with the correct size in the tray or on the paper support.
- Check the paper guides, and then make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray or on the paper support.
- · Cancel the current print job.

Standard Network Software Error

Try one or more of the following:

- Press or to clear the message.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.

Unrecoverable Scan Error

Try one or more of the following:

- Restart your printer.
- Update your printer firmware.

USB Device Not Supported

Remove the unrecognized USB device and replace it with a supported device.

USB Hub Not Supported

Remove the unrecognized USB hub.

Clearing paper jams

- "Paper jam in the printer" on page 141
- "Paper jam in the duplex unit" on page 141
- "Paper jam in the ADF (select models only)" on page 142
- "Paper or specialty media misfeeds" on page 143

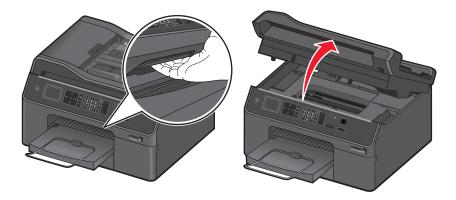
Paper jam in the printer

Note: The parts inside the printer are sensitive. Avoid unnecessarily touching these parts while clearing jams.

1 Check the paper tray, exit bin, or jam clearance area for any jammed paper.

Notes:

- For select models that support a second tray, make sure you also check the second tray.
- If the paper tray was removed, then make sure you do not replace the tray until the jam is cleared.
- Make sure you do not tilt the printer when checking the jam clearance area. Grasp and pull the latch under the printer control panel to open the printer.
- Before clearing the jam, make sure the printhead is moved to the side and away from the jammed paper.



2 Firmly grasp the paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Be careful not to tear the paper while removing it.

3 If necessary, close the printer to clear the message.

Paper jam in the duplex unit

Note: The parts inside the printer are sensitive. Avoid unnecessarily touching these parts while clearing jams.

1 Pull up the duplex latch and remove the duplex unit.

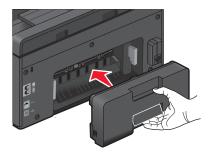


2 Firmly grasp the paper, and then gently pull it out.



Note: Be careful not to tear the paper while removing it.

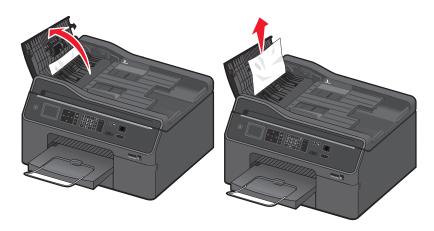
3 Reinsert the duplex unit to clear the message.



Paper jam in the ADF (select models only)

Note: The parts inside the printer are sensitive. Avoid unnecessarily touching these parts while clearing jams.

1 Open the ADF cover, and then gently pull out the jammed paper.



Notes:

- Make sure the ADF cover is fully opened to ensure that the jammed paper is properly removed.
- Be careful not to tear the paper while removing it.
- 2 Close the ADF cover.

Note: Make sure there is no paper on the ADF input tray before closing the ADF cover.

- **3** If necessary, touch **OK** or press **OK**, depending on your printer model.
- **4** Resume the copy, scan, or fax job.

Paper or specialty media misfeeds

These are possible solutions if paper or specialty media misfeeds or skews, or if multiple sheets feed or stick together. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK PAPER CONDITION

Use only new, unwrinkled paper.

CHECK PAPER LOADING

- Load a smaller amount of paper into the printer.
- Load paper with the print side facedown. (If you are not sure which side is the printable side, see the instructions that came with the paper.)
- Check the loading instructions for your paper or specialty media.

REMOVE EACH PAGE AS IT IS PRINTED

ADJUST THE PAPER GUIDES TO FIT THE LOADED PAPER

Print troubleshooting

- "Poor quality at the edges of the page" on page 143
- "Streaks or lines on printed image" on page 144
- "Print speed is slow" on page 145
- "Computer slows down when printing" on page 145

Poor quality at the edges of the page

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CHECK MINIMUM PRINT SETTINGS

Unless you are using the borderless feature, use these minimum print margin settings:

- Left and right margins:
 - 6.35 mm (0.25 in.) for letter-size paper
 - 3.37 mm (0.133 in.) for all paper sizes except letter
- Top margin: 1.7 mm (0.067 in.)
- Bottom margin: 12.7 mm (0.5 in.)

SELECT THE BORDERLESS PRINT FEATURE

For Windows users

- 1 With a photo open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Navigate to:

Paper/Finishing tab > select a borderless setting > OK

4 Click Print.

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a photo open, choose File > Page Setup.
- **2** From the "Format for" pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- **3** From the Paper Size pop-up menu, choose a paper size that has "(Borderless)" in its name. For example, if you loaded a 4 x 6 photo paper, then choose **US 4 x 6 in (Borderless)**.
- 4 Click OK.
- **5** From the menu bar, choose **File** > **Print**.
- **6** From the Printer pop-up menu, choose your printer.
- 7 From the print options pop-up menu, choose Quality & Media.
- **8** From the Paper Type pop-up menu, choose a paper type.
- **9** From the Print Quality pop-up menu, choose **Best** or **Photo**.
- 10 Click Print.

Streaks or lines on printed image

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE INK LEVELS

Replace low or empty ink cartridges.

SELECT A HIGHER PRINT QUALITY FROM THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

MAKE SURE THE INK CARTRIDGES ARE PROPERLY INSTALLED

ALIGN THE PRINTHEAD

CLEAN OR DEEP CLEAN THE PRINTHEAD NOZZLES

Note: If these solutions do not remove the streaks or lines on the printed image, then contact technical support.

Printed page has ink smears or smudges

Note: The following solutions apply to ink smears or smudges that occur in the printer.

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

SELECT A RECOMMENDED PAPER FOR THE PRINT JOB

For more information, see the section on "Using different paper sizes and types" in the User's Guide.

SET THE PAGE DRY TIME VALUE TO EXTENDED

Under conditions of high humidity, or for certain paper types and brands, the normal drying time may not allow the ink to dry completely. For more information, see "Setting the page dry time" in the *User's Guide*.

Print speed is slow

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

SELECT A LOWER PRINT QUALITY FROM THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

MANUALLY SELECT A PAPER TYPE THAT MATCHES THE TYPE OF PAPER YOU ARE USING

REMOVE AND REINSTALL THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

MAXIMIZE COMPUTER PROCESSING SPEED

- Close all applications not in use.
- Minimize the number and size of graphics and images in the document.

ADD MEMORY TO THE COMPUTER

Consider upgrading the RAM.

Computer slows down when printing

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE USB CONNECTION BETWEEN THE PRINTER AND COMPUTER

If your computer is connected to the printer through a USB cable, then try using a different USB cable.

REFRESH YOUR NETWORK CONNECTIONS

- 1 If your computer is connected to an Ethernet or wireless network, then turn off the access point (wireless router) and turn it back on.
- **2** Wait one minute for the printer and computer to reestablish the connection.

CLOSE ALL APPLICATIONS NOT IN USE

Temporarily close unused applications or end processes that are taking too much memory from your computer.

CHECK YOUR COMPUTER PERFORMANCE

You may need to change how your computer manages resources and processes.

For more information on improving computer performance, see the documentation that came with your operating system.

Copy and scan troubleshooting

- "Copier or scanner does not respond" on page 146
- "Scanner unit does not close" on page 146
- "Poor copy or scanned image quality" on page 146
- "Partial copies or scans of documents or photos" on page 147
- "Scan was not successful" on page 147
- "Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer" on page 147
- "Cannot scan to a computer over a network" on page 148

Copier or scanner does not respond

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

SET YOUR PRINTER AS THE DEFAULT PRINTER

Remove and reinstall the printer software

Scanner unit does not close

- **1** Lift the scanner unit.
- **2** Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open.
- 3 Lower the scanner unit.

Poor copy or scanned image quality

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CLEAN THE SCANNER GLASS

ADJUST THE SCAN QUALITY

REVIEW THE TIPS FOR COPYING, SCANNING, AND IMPROVING PRINT QUALITY

Use a clearer version of the original document or image

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass and in the correct corner

Partial copies or scans of documents or photos

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass and in the placement corner

SELECT A PAPER SIZE THAT MATCHES THE LOADED PAPER

Make sure the Original Size setting matches the size of the document you are scanning

Scan was not successful

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE USB CONNECTION

- 1 Check the USB cable for any obvious damage. If the cable is damaged, then use a new one.
- **2** Firmly plug the square end of the USB cable into the back of the printer.

Note: If you continue to have problems, then try another USB port on the computer. You may have connected to a defective port.

RESTART THE COMPUTER

Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

CLOSE OTHER SOFTWARE PROGRAMS THAT ARE NOT BEING USED

RESTART THE COMPUTER

Cannot scan to a computer over a network

If the "Before you troubleshoot" checklist does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure the printer and the destination computer are connected to the same network

Make sure the printer software is installed on the destination computer

E-mail troubleshooting

• "Cannot send e-mail" on page 148

Cannot send e-mail

CHECK YOUR E-MAIL CONFIGURATION SETTINGS

Make sure you have correctly completed the e-mail setup and successfully configured an SMTP server.

CHECK YOUR NETWORK CONNECTION

Make sure the printer is connected to an Ethernet or wireless network. Your network must be connected to the Internet for the printer to communicate with the SMTP server.

CHECK YOUR PROXY CONFIGURATION

Your proxy server configuration should allow SMTP server connections. For help with your proxy server or SMTP settings, contact your system support person.

Make sure to enter a valid recipient e-mail address

MAKE SURE THE RECIPIENT MAILBOX IS NOT FULL

This causes e-mail to bounce back to your inbox.

Fax troubleshooting

- "Fax troubleshooting checklist" on page 149
- "Cannot send faxes" on page 149
- "Cannot receive faxes" on page 150
- "Cannot run the fax software" on page 151

For detailed descriptions of common terms and tasks, see the following:

- "Setting up the printer to fax" on page 72
- "Faxing FAQ" on page 90

Fax troubleshooting checklist

If you encounter problems sending and receiving faxes, then check the connection first:

1 Check for a dial tone on the telephone line by plugging an analog telephone into the wall jack, DSL filter, VoIP device, or cable modem where you connected the printer. Make sure you plug the telephone into the same port.

If you do not hear a dial tone, then contact your line provider.

2 While the printer is connected to the telephone line, check for a dial tone by plugging an analog telephone into the printer.

If you do not hear a dial tone, then use the checklist below. Listen for a dial tone after checking each item.

If you hear a dial tone but still have problems sending and receiving faxes, then see the other topics in this section.

Connection checklist

- Make sure that the printer and other devices on the line (if applicable) are set up and configured correctly according
 to your setup scenario.
- Make sure that the cables are connected to the correct ports.
- Make sure that the cables are securely plugged in.

Check the cable connections for the following hardware, if applicable:

Power supply	Answering machine	Cable modem	Splitter
Telephone	VoIP adapter	DSL filter	RJ-11 adapter

- If the printer is connected to a Digital Subscriber Line, then make sure you are using a DSL filter for the printer.
- If the printer is connected to a VoIP adapter or cable modem, then make sure that the printer is plugged into the first phone port.
- If you are using a splitter, then make sure that you are using a phone splitter. Do not use a line splitter.

Cannot send faxes

If the "Fax troubleshooting checklist" does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure that you have registered your user information in the printer

If you did not enter your user information during initial setup, then enter your fax name and fax number. In some countries, you cannot send a fax without entering your fax name or company name. Some fax machines also block unknown faxes or faxes without sender information.

Decrease the transmission speed of the fax modem

The modem of the printer can transmit data at 33,600 bps. This is the maximum speed at which the printer can send and receive faxes. It is not necessary, however, to set the modem to its fastest transmission capability. The speed of the modem of the receiving fax machine must match or be greater than the speed at which you are sending your fax. Otherwise, your fax will not be received.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

2 Select a sending speed, and then press or.

ENABLE ERROR CORRECTION

Errors and blurs may appear in the faxed document if there is too much noise on the line. This option enables the printer to transmit the bad blocks of data again and correct the errors. When a fax has too many errors, the fax may be rejected by the receiving fax machine.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
→ Setup > ok > Fax Setup > ok > Dialing and Sending > ok > Error Correction > ok
```

2 Check to see if error correction is set to On.

If it is not set to On, then press the arrow buttons to select On, and then press ok.

ENABLE AUTOMATIC FAX CONVERSION

If the receiving fax machine does not support color fax, then this option automatically converts the outgoing color fax to black and white. It also automatically reduces the resolution of the fax to a resolution that the receiving machine can support.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

2 Check to see if automatic fax conversion is set to On.

If it is not set to On, then press the arrow buttons to select On, and then press OK.

Make sure that the Dial Prefix setting is correct

The dialing prefix is the number or series of numbers that you press before you can dial the actual fax number or telephone number. If the printer is in an office setting or in a private branch exchange, this can be a specific number that you need to press so you can make a call outside the office.

Make sure that the dial prefix entered in the printer is correct for your network.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

- **2** Press the arrow buttons to create or modify the prefix.
- 3 If the prefix is not correct, enter the correct prefix, and then press or

Cannot receive faxes

If the "Fax troubleshooting checklist" does not solve the problem, then try one or more of the following:

Make sure that you have configured the correct settings for your setup

The fax settings depend on whether the printer is connected to its own fax line or shares the line with other devices.

If the printer is sharing the telephone line with an answering machine, then make sure that the following are set:

- Auto Answer is On.
- The printer picks up on a greater number of rings than the answering machine.
- The printer picks up on the correct distinctive ring (if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service).

If the printer is sharing the telephone line with a telephone subscribed to voice mail, then make sure that the following are set:

- Auto Answer is Off (if you have only one number on the telephone line).
- The printer picks up on the correct distinctive ring (if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service).

Make sure that the printer is connected to an analog port

The printer is an analog device. If you are using a PBX system, then make sure that the printer is connected to an analog port on the PBX. You may need a digital line converter that converts digital signals into analog signals.

Make sure that the printer memory is not full

The printer saves an incoming fax to the printer memory before it prints the fax. If the printer runs out of ink or runs out of paper while receiving the fax, then the printer saves the fax so you can print it later. However, if the printer memory is full, then the printer may not be able to receive more incoming faxes. An error message appears on the display when the printer memory is full. Resolve the error to free up space in the printer memory.

Make sure that Fax Forwarding is disabled

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:
 - ↑ > Setup > OK > Fax Setup > OK > Ringing and Answering > OK > Fax Forward > OK
- 2 Press the arrow buttons to scroll to Off, and then press or.

INCREASE THE RINGER VOLUME

If you set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off), then increase the ringer volume.

Make sure that you have the correct manual answer code

If you set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off), then you need to press the correct code when a fax comes in so that the printer can receive it.

- **1** From the printer control panel, navigate to:
- **2** Copy the manual answer code that appears on the display.

Note: To increase the security, you can change your manual pickup code to a number that only you know. You can enter up to 7 characters for your code. The valid characters are the digits 0–9 and the characters # and *.

Cannot run the fax software

The printer must be connected to a telephone, DSL, VoIP, or cable service before you can configure the fax settings in the fax software.

MAKE SURE A FAX DRIVER IS INSTALLED

The fax option is available for use only with the PostScript driver or the Universal Fax Driver. For information on installing these drivers, see the *Software and Documentation* CD.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER IS CONNECTED TO A TELEPHONE LINE

You need to connect the printer to your telephone line (through a standard wall jack, a DSL filter, a VoIP adapter, or a cable modem) before you can open the fax software and configure the fax settings.

Fax error messages on the printer control panel

Error Message:	What it indicates:	Possible solutions:
Remote Fax Error	The receiving fax machine cannot receive the fax. The error on the receiving end could be due to several factors.	 Resend the fax. There may have been a problem with the quality of the connection. Decrease the transmission speed of your fax modem. Register your user information. In some countries, you cannot send a fax without registering your fax name and fax number. Some fax machines also block faxes without sender information.
Fax Mode Unsupported	The receiving fax machine does not support color fax or the scan resolution of the document that you are sending.	 Enable Auto Fax Conversion. The printer automatically converts color faxes to black and lowers the scan resolution of the document. Lower the fax quality. Reformat the document on Letter-size paper.
Unsupported Compression	The fax modem of the receiving fax machine does not support data compression. Fax modems compress data to speed up transmission, but the receiving fax modem needs to have the same compression code.	 Lower the transmission speed of the fax modem, and then resend the fax. Enable Auto Fax Conversion.
Unsupported Resolution	The receiving fax machine does not support the scan resolution of the document that you are sending.	Lower the fax quality.Enable Auto Fax Conversion.
Unrecoverable Fax Error	The fax modem encountered critical errors.	Turn off the printer, turn it back on, and then resend the fax.
Fax Modem Error	The fax modem of the printer may be busy, or the fax modem may have encountered problems during transmission.	Turn off the printer, turn it back on, and then resend the fax.
Phone Line is connected to the incorrect jack on the back of the machine.	The telephone cable is connected to the wrong port on the back of the printer.	Connect the phone cable to the in port on the back of the printer.

Error Message:	What it indicates:	Possible solutions:
Digital line detected	The printer is connected to a digital line.	The printer is an analog device and must be connected to an analog line. To connect the printer to a digital line, you must use a digital line converter or a filter. For more information, see the "Setting up the printer to fax" section.
Failed to Connect	The printer cannot detect a dial tone.	See the "Fax troubleshooting checklist."
Phone Line Error		
Phone Line Not Connected		
Phone Line Busy	Your telephone line or the telephone line of the receiving fax machine is busy. This happens especially if the printer is sharing the line with other devices (telephone, answering machine).	 Set the printer to redial. Increase the time between the redial attempts. Place a test call to the number to which you want to send a fax to make sure that it is working correctly. If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending the fax. Schedule to resend the fax at a later time. Set the printer to scan before dialing. The scanned document is saved in the printer memory. The printer can then retrieve it and automatically redial the number.
No Answer	Auto Answer may have been turned off on the receiving fax machine.	 Verify the number, and then resend the fax. Set the printer to redial. Note: Depending on your country or region, there may be a limit on the number of redial attempts, regardless of the redial settings that you set in your printer. Schedule to resend the fax at a later time.
No Caller ID Call Stopped	Your printer stopped the call because the incoming fax has no sender information. You may have chosen to block faxes with no Caller ID or faxes without Caller IDs are not allowed in your country or region.	Disable Block No-ID.

To troubleshoot error messages in the fax software, click **Help** to view the help information for the fax software.

Memory card troubleshooting

- "Memory card troubleshooting checklist" on page 154
- "Nothing happens when a memory card is inserted" on page 154

Memory card troubleshooting checklist

Before you troubleshoot, use the following checklist to solve most memory card problems:

- Make sure that the memory card you are using can be used in the printer.
- Make sure the memory card is not damaged.
- Make sure memory card contains supported file types.

Nothing happens when a memory card is inserted

If the "Memory card troubleshooting checklist" does not solve the problem, then try the following:

REINSERT THE MEMORY CARD

The memory card may have been inserted too slowly. Remove and then reinsert the memory card quickly.

Network troubleshooting

- "Wireless troubleshooting checklist" on page 156
- "The Continue button is unavailable" on page 154
- "Cannot print and there is a firewall on the computer" on page 156
- "Communication with printer lost when connected to Virtual Private Network (VPN)" on page 156

The Continue button is unavailable

Try the following solutions in the order they appear until the Continue button becomes active and available:

CHECK IF THE USB CABLE IS SECURELY PLUGGED INTO THE USB PORTS ON BOTH THE COMPUTER AND THE PRINTER

USB ports are marked with ...

Make sure the printer is plugged in and turned on

Make sure the \bigcirc button is lit. If you have just turned on the printer, then you might need to disconnect the USB cable and then reconnect it.

MAKE SURE THE USB PORT ON THE COMPUTER IS WORKING

Test the USB port by connecting other devices to it. If you can successfully use other devices from the port, then the port is working.

Notes:

 Your port may be working fine, but certain conflicts can occur with multiple USB devices. Try disconnecting one of your other USB devices.

• If the USB port on the computer is not working, then try using the other USB ports on the computer.

Make sure the USB cable is working

Try using a different USB cable. If you are using a cable longer than 10 feet, then try using a shorter cable.

Note: USB hubs, extension cables, port replicators, and docking stations may cause connection issues. Try disconnecting these devices so that your printer is directly connected to your computer.

Make sure you are using the correct CD for your printer model

Compare the printer model on the CD to the printer model on the printer. The numbers should either match exactly or be within the same series.

If unsure, look for an updated version of the printer software on the Lexmark Web site. For more information, see the printer *User's Guide*.

RECONNECT THE PRINTER POWER SUPPLY

1 Turn off the printer.

Note: Make sure the printer is not in Sleep mode. Press and hold b for three seconds to turn off the printer.

- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then pull out the power cord from the power supply.
- **3** After one minute, reconnect the power cord into the power supply, and then plug the power cord into the wall outlet.
- **4** Turn on the printer.

RUN THE INSTALLER AGAIN

- **1** Close the installer.
- **2** Remove the CD, and then restart the computer.
- **3** Insert the CD, and then run the installer again.

Make sure your computer is able to acknowledge USB activity on the USB port

Open the Device Manager to check if it has activity whenever a USB device is connected to a USB port:

- 1 Click 0, or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type devmgmt.msc.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.

4 Watch the Device Manager window while connecting a USB cable or another device to the USB port. The window refreshes when the Device Manager recognizes the USB connection.

- If there is activity on the Device Manager but none of the previous solutions worked, then call customer support.
- If there is no activity on the Device Manager, then there may be a problem with your computer and its USB support. The computer must recognize the USB connection in order for installation to work.

Cannot print and there is a firewall on the computer

Third-party (non-Microsoft) firewalls can interfere with wireless printing. If the printer and computer are configured correctly, and the wireless network is working, but the printer will not print wirelessly, then a firewall could be the problem. If there is a firewall (other than the Windows firewall) on the computer, try one or more of the following:

- Update the firewall using the most recent update available from the manufacturer. Refer to the documentation that came with your firewall for instructions on how to do this.
- If programs request firewall access when you install the printer or try to print, make sure you allow those programs to run.
- Temporarily disable the firewall and install the wireless printer on the computer. Re-enable the firewall when you have completed the wireless installation.

Communication with printer lost when connected to Virtual Private Network (VPN)

You will lose your connection to a wireless printer on your local network when connected to most *Virtual Private Networks* (VPNs). Most VPNs allow users to communicate with only the VPN and no other network at the same time. If you would like to have the ability to connect to your local network and to a VPN at the same time, the system support person for the VPN must enable split tunneling. Be aware that some organizations will not allow split tunneling due to security or technical concerns.

Wireless troubleshooting

- "Cannot print over wireless network" on page 157
- "Wireless print server not installed" on page 160
- "'Communication not available' message appears when printing wirelessly" on page 160
- "Communication with printer lost when connected to Virtual Private Network (VPN)" on page 156
- "Resolving intermittent wireless communications issues" on page 162

Wireless troubleshooting checklist

Before beginning to troubleshoot the wireless printer, verify the following:

- The printer, the computer, and the access point (wireless router) are all plugged in and turned on.
- The wireless network is working properly.

Try accessing other computers on your wireless network.

If your network has Internet access, then try connecting to the Internet over a wireless connection.

Your SSID is correct.

Print a network setup page to verify the SSID the printer is using.

If you are not sure if your SSID is correct, then run the wireless setup again.

Your WEP key or WPA passphrase is correct (if your network is secure).

Log on to the access point and check the security settings.

A security key is like a password. All devices on the same wireless network using WEP, WPA, or WPA2 share the same security key.

If you are not sure if your security information is correct, then run the wireless setup again.

• The printer and the computer are within the range of the wireless network.

For most networks, the printer and the computer should be within 100 feet (30 meters) of the access point (wireless router).

- The Wi-Fi indicator is green and successfully connected.
- The printer driver is installed on the computer from which you are performing a task.
- The correct printer port is selected.
- The computer and printer are both connected to the same wireless network.
- The printer is located away from obstacles or electronic devices that could interfere with the wireless signal.

Make sure the printer and access point are not separated by poles, walls, or support columns containing metal or concrete.

Many devices can interfere with the wireless signal, including baby monitors, motors, cordless phones, security system cameras, other wireless networks, and some Bluetooth devices.

Cannot print over wireless network

If you encountered problems while installing, or if your printer does not appear in the printers folder or as a printer option when sending a print job, then try uninstalling and reinstalling the software.

Before you reinstall the software, check the troubleshooting checklist, and then do the following:

TURN THE ACCESS POINT (WIRELESS ROUTER) OFF AND THEN BACK ON

Wait one minute for the printer and computer to reestablish the connection. This can sometimes refresh network connections and resolve connectivity issues.

DISCONNECT FROM VPN SESSION

When you are connected to another network through a VPN connection, you will not be able to access the printer over your wireless network. End your VPN session, and then try printing again.

Make sure Demo Mode is turned off

Select printer features are not available when Demo Mode is turned on.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

> Setup > OK > Demo Mode > OK > Off > OK

CHECK YOUR WEP KEY OR WPA PASSPHRASE

If your access point is using WEP security, then the WEP key should be:

Exactly 10 or 26 hexadecimal characters. Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.

or

• Exactly 5 or 13 ASCII characters. ASCII characters are letters, numbers, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WEP key are case-sensitive.

If your access point is using WPA or WPA2 security, then the WPA passphrase should be:

• Exactly 64 hexadecimal characters. Hexadecimal characters are A–F, a–f, and 0–9.

or

• From 8 to 63 ASCII characters. ASCII characters are letters, numbers, and symbols found on a keyboard. ASCII characters in a WPA passphrase are case-sensitive.

Note: If you do not know this information, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact your system support person.

CHECK IF YOUR ACCESS POINT HAS AN ASSOCIATION/REGISTRATION BUTTON

Wireless broadband boxes in Europe, the Middle East, and Africa such as LiveBox, AliceBox, N9UF Box, FreeBox, or Club Internet may require you to press an association/registration button when adding the printer to your wireless network.

If you are using one of these boxes and need more information, then see the documentation that came with your box, or contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Move your access point away from other electronic devices

There may be temporary interference from electronic devices such as microwave ovens or other appliances, cordless phones, baby monitors, and security system cameras. Make sure your access point is not positioned too closely to these devices.

MOVE THE COMPUTER AND/OR PRINTER CLOSER TO THE ACCESS POINT

The range of your wireless network depends on many factors, including the abilities of your access point and network adapters. If you are having trouble printing, then try placing the computer and printer no more than 100 feet apart.

CHECK THE WIRELESS SIGNAL QUALITY

Print a network setup page and check the signal quality. If the signal quality is listed as good or excellent, then another factor is causing the problem.

CHECK YOUR ADVANCED SECURITY SETTINGS

- If you are using MAC (Media Access Control) address filtering to limit access to your wireless network, then you must add the printer MAC address to the list of addresses allowed to connect to the access point.
- If you set the access point to issue a limited number of IP addresses, then you must change this so that the printer can be added.

Note: If you do not know how to make these changes, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact the person who set up your wireless network.

Make sure your computer is connected to your access point

- See if you have access to the Internet by opening your Web browser and accessing any site.
- If there are other computers or resources on your wireless network, then check to see if you can access them from your computer.

MAKE SURE THAT YOUR COMPUTER AND PRINTER ARE CONNECTED TO THE SAME WIRELESS NETWORK

If the printer is not on the same wireless network as the computer, then you will not be able to print wirelessly. The SSID of the printer must match the SSID of the computer, if the computer is already connected to the wireless network.

For Windows users

- **1** Obtain the SSID of the network that the computer is connected to.
 - a Type the IP address of your access point into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the access point:

- 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type cmd.
- 3 Press Enter or click OK.
- 4 Type ipconfig, and then press Enter. Check the Wireless Network Connection section:
 - The "Default Gateway" entry is typically the access point .
 - The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 192.168.2.134.
- **b** Type the user name and password of the access point when prompted.
- c Click OK.
- **d** In the Wireless settings section, look for the SSID.
- e Write down the SSID.

Note: Make sure you copy it exactly, including any capital letters.

- **2** Obtain the SSID of the network that the printer is connected to:
 - **a** From the printer, print a network setup page.
 - **b** In the Wireless section, look for **SSID**.
- **3** Compare the SSID of the computer and SSID of the printer.

If the SSIDs are the same, then the computer and the printer are connected to the same wireless network.

If the SSIDs are not the same, then run the utility again to set up the printer on the wireless network used by the computer.

For Macintosh users with an AirPort base station

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

The SSID of the network that the computer is connected to is displayed in the Network Name menu.

2 Write down the SSID.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort

The SSID of the network that the computer is connected to is displayed in the Network menu.

2 Write down the SSID.

For Macintosh users with an access point

- 1 Type the IP address of the access point in the address field of your Web browser, and then continue to step 2.

 If you do not know the IP address of the access point, then do the following:
 - a From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

- b Click Advanced or Configure.
- c Click TCP/IP.

The Router entry is typically the access point.

- 2 Type your user name and password when prompted, and then click OK.
- **3** In the Wireless settings section, look for the SSID.
- **4** Write down the SSID, security type, and the WEP key/WPA passphrase (if shown).

Notes:

- Make sure you copy the network information down exactly, including any capital letters.
- Store the SSID and the WEP key or WPA passphrase in a safe place for future reference.

Make sure your OS is compatible with wireless printing through AirPort

The printer supports wireless printing only through AirPort base stations for Mac OS X version 10.5 or later.

Wireless print server not installed

You may see a message during installation indicating that the printer does not have a wireless print server installed. If you are sure the printer is capable of wireless printing, try the following:

CHECK POWER

Make sure the (1) light is on.

"Communication not available" message appears when printing wirelessly

Try one or more of the following:

Make sure your computer and printer have valid IP addresses for the network

If you are using a laptop and have power saving settings enabled, then you may see the "Communication not available" message on your computer screen when you attempt to print wirelessly. This can occur if the laptop hard drive has powered down.

If you see this message, then wait a few seconds and then try to print again. The laptop and printer require a few seconds to power up again and reattach to the wireless network.

If you see this message again after you have waited long enough for the printer and the laptop to attach to the network, then there may be a problem with your wireless network.

Make sure that the laptop and printer have both received IP addresses:

For Windows users

- 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type cmd.
- **3** Press Enter, or click **OK**.
- **4** Type **ipconfig**, and then press **Enter**.

The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 192.168.0.100.

For Macintosh users

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

About This Mac > More Info

- **2** From the Contents pane, choose **Network**.
- **3** If you are connected over a wireless network, then choose **AirPort** from the Active Services list. The Router entry is typically the access point.

Locating the printer IP address

- From the printer, print a network setup page.
 In the TCP/IP section, look for Address.
- View the printer settings.

From the printer control panel, navigate to:

```
> Setup > OK > Network Setup > OK > Wireless 802.11 b/g/n > OK > Network Connection Setup > OK > TCP/IP > OK > IP Address > OK
```

If the printer or the laptop does not have an IP address, or if either has an address of 169.254.x.y (where x and y are any two numbers between 0 and 255), then do the following:

- 1 Turn off the device that does not have a valid IP address (the laptop, the printer, or both).
- 2 Turn on the device, and then check the IP addresses again.

If the printer or the laptop still does not receive a valid IP address, then there is a problem with your wireless network. Try the following:

- Make sure your access point (wireless router) is turned on and is working.
- Remove any objects that could be blocking the signal.
- Temporarily turn off any unnecessary wireless devices on your network and pause any network-intensive activities, like large file transfers or network games. If the network is too busy, then it is possible that the printer is not receiving the IP address within the allowed time.
- Make sure your DHCP server, which may also be your wireless router, is working and is configured to assign IP addresses. If you are not sure how to do this, then refer to the manual that came with your wireless router.

If the printer and computer have valid IP addresses and the network is operating correctly, then continue troubleshooting.

MAKE SURE THE WIRELESS PORT IS SELECTED

Note: This solution applies to Windows users only.

- 1 Click **4**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
- 4 Right-click the printer, and then select Properties or Printer properties from the menu.
- **5** Click the **Ports** tab, and then locate the selected port.
 - The selected port has a check mark beside it in the Port column.
- 6 If the Description column of the selected port indicates that it is a USB port, then scroll through the list and select the port with Printer Port in the Description column. Check the printer model in the Printer column to make sure you select the right printer port.
- 7 Click **OK**, and then try to print again.

Make sure bidirectional communication is enabled

Note: This solution applies to Windows users only.

- 1 Click 0, or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 3 Press Enter. or click OK.
- 4 Right-click the printer, and then select Properties or Printer properties from the menu.
- 5 Click the Ports tab.
- **6** Click the box next to **Enable bidirectional support** if it is not already checked.
- 7 Click Apply > OK, and then try to print again.

Resolving intermittent wireless communications issues

You may notice that your printer works for a short time and then stops working, although apparently nothing has changed on your wireless network.

Many different issues can interrupt network communications, and sometimes more than one problem exists at the same time. Try one or more of the following:

DISCONNECT FROM ALL VPNs WHEN ATTEMPTING TO USE THE WIRELESS NETWORK

Most Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) allow computers to communicate with only the VPN and no other network at the same time. Disconnect from the VPN before installing the driver on the computer or before running the wireless setup on the computer.

To check if the computer is currently connected to a VPN, open your VPN Client software and check your VPN connections. If you do not have a VPN Client software installed, then check the connections manually using the Windows VPN Client.

If you would like to have the ability to connect to your local network and to a VPN at the same time, then request the system support person for the VPN to allow split tunneling. Be aware that some organizations will not allow split tunneling due to security or technical concerns.

TURN OFF THE ACCESS POINT (WIRELESS ROUTER) AND TURN IT BACK ON

Wait one minute for the printer and computer to reestablish the connection. This can sometimes refresh network connections and resolve connectivity issues.

ELIMINATE NETWORK CONGESTION

If a wireless network is too busy, then the computer and printer may have difficulty communicating with each other. Some causes of wireless network congestion can include:

- Transferring large files across the network
- Networked games
- Peer-to-peer file swapping applications
- Streaming video
- Too many computers on the wireless network at once

ELIMINATE SOURCES OF INTERFERENCE

Common household items can potentially disrupt wireless network communications. Cordless phones (but not cellular phones), microwave ovens, baby monitors, almost any kitchen appliance, wireless surveillance equipment, nearby wireless networks, and any appliance containing a motor can disrupt wireless network communications.

Try turning on any potential sources of interference and see if it causes the problem. If it does, then separate your wireless network from the device.

CHANGE THE CHANNEL THE ACCESS POINT USES

You can sometimes eliminate interference from unknown sources by changing the channel your access point uses to broadcast. There are three distinct channels on a router. See the documentation that came with your router to determine which three apply. Other channels are offered as options, but these overlap. If the router is configured to use the default settings, then change the channel setting to use a different distinct channel. If you are not sure how to change the channel, then see the documentation that came with your access point.

CONFIGURE THE ACCESS POINT WITH A UNIQUE SSID

Many wireless networks use the SSID that the router was originally configured by the manufacturer to use. Using the default SSID can cause problems when more than one network is operating in the same area with the same SSID. The printer or computer may attempt to attach to the wrong network, although it will appear to be trying to connect to the correct network.

To avoid this type of interference, change the SSID on your access point from the default. If you are not sure how to change the SSID, then see the documentation that came with your access point.

Note: You must change the SSID on all of the other devices that access your wireless network if you change the SSID on the access point.

Assign static IP addresses to all devices in the network

Most wireless networks use a DHCP server (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) built in to the wireless router to assign IP addresses to clients on the wireless network. DHCP addresses are assigned when they are needed, as when a new device is added to the wireless network or when it is powered on. Wireless devices must send a request to the router, and receive an IP address in response so they can function on the network. Because the wireless router performs many other tasks besides assigning addresses, it sometimes does not respond quickly enough with an address. The requesting device sometimes gives up before it receives an address.

Try assigning static IP addresses to the devices in your network to resolve this issue.

To assign a static IP address to the printer:

- 1 Complete the wireless setup, allowing the printer to receive a DHCP address from a DHCP server on the network.
- 2 Print a network setup page to see what IP address is currently assigned to the printer.
- **3** Open a Web browser and then type the printer IP address in the address field. Press **Enter**.
- 4 Click Configuration > TCP/IP > Set static IP address.
- 5 In the Address field, type the IP address you want to assign to the printer, and then click **Submit**.

Confirm that the IP address is updated by typing the static IP address in the browser address field and checking to see if the printer Web page reloads. For more information on assigning static IP addresses, see the documentation that came with your router and operating system.

CHECK FOR KNOWN ISSUES WITH THE ACCESS POINT

Some wireless routers have documented defects that were identified and resolved by the manufacturers. Visit the company Web site of the router manufacturer. Check for firmware updates and other advice from the manufacturer. See the documentation that came with your wireless router if you are not sure how to reach the manufacturer Web site.

CHECK FOR WIRELESS NETWORK ADAPTER UPDATES

If you are having trouble printing from one particular computer, then check the Web site of the manufacturer of the wireless network adapter card in that computer. It is possible that there is an updated driver available that could resolve the issue.

CHANGE ALL NETWORK DEVICES TO THE SAME TYPE

While it is possible to successfully mix 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n devices on the same wireless network, the faster devices will sometimes prevent the slower devices from communicating.

Try turning on only the network devices of the same type and see if network communications improve. If this solves the problem, then you may want to upgrade your older devices with newer wireless network adapters.

Purchase a new router

If your router is several years old, then it may not be fully compatible with the newer wireless devices on your network. Consider purchasing a newer router that is fully compliant with the 802.11 IEEE specifications.

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark Pro4000 Series

Machine type:

4447

Model(s):

Pro4000: 0n0, 0nE; Pro4000c: 000

Edition notice

January 2012

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit support.lexmark.com.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit www.lexmark.com.

If you don't have access to the Internet, you can contact Lexmark by mail:

Lexmark International, Inc. Bldg 004-2/CSC 740 New Circle Road NW Lexington, KY 40550 USA

© 2012 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This software and any accompanying documentation provided under this agreement are commercial computer software and documentation developed exclusively at private expense.

Trademarks

Lexmark and Lexmark with diamond design are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.



AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple, Inc.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:

Director of Lexmark Technology & Services Lexmark International, Inc. 740 West New Circle Road Lexington, KY 40550 (859) 232–3000

Modular component notice

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M03-003; FCC ID: US:2G2CN00BM03003; Industry Canada IC:2376A-M03003 Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M01-003; FCC ID: IYLM01003; Industry Canada IC:2376A-M01003

Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA		
Printing	52 dBA	
Scanning	47 dBA	
Copying	52 dBA	
Ready	inaudible	

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com** for your local sales office phone number.

Battery notice

This product contains Perchlorate material. Special handling may apply. For more information, go to http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/.

Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



Temperature information

Ambient temperature	15 to 32C (60 to 90F)
Shipping and storage temperature	-40 to 60C (-40 to 140F), 1 to 60C (34 to 140F)

Power consumption

Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	31.58 W
Сору	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	29.05 W
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	13.17 W
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	7.91 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	3.50 W
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0.45 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the *Sleep Mode Timeout*.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	3	30	
	-	1	

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2005/32/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-using products.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at **www.lexmark.com** or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 14B5109 or 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The Lexmark filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (nº de référence Lexmark : 14B5109 ou 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 14B5109 oder 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Lexmark Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 14B5109 o 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro Lexmark poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

Notice to users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	ВЕ	BG	СН	СҮ	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	ни	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

-	
Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΌ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪ́ΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky

Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Statement of Limited Warranty

Lexmark Pro4000 Series

Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- —Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- —Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at http://support.lexmark.com.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- -Modification or unauthorized attachments
- —Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- -Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- -Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- —Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- -Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- -Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- -Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFOREUSING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENTS, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

PRINTER LICENSE AGREEMENT

I agree that this patented printer is licensed for, and designed to work with only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges for the life of the patented printer. I agree to: (1) use only genuine Lexmark ink cartridges with this printer (except I may use replacement cartridges made by Lexmark but sold without single use terms as described in the below cartridge license agreement), and (2) pass this printer license/agreement to any subsequent user of this printer.

CARTRIDGE LICENSE AGREEMENT*

I agree that the patented print cartridge(s) shipped with this printing device are sold subject to the following license/agreement: The patented print cartridge(s) contained inside is/are licensed for a single use only and is/are designed to stop working after delivering a fixed amount of ink. A variable amount of ink will remain in the cartridge when replacement is required. After this single use, the license to use the print cartridge terminates, and the used cartridge must be returned only to Lexmark for remanufacturing, refilling or recycling. If I buy another cartridge in the future that is sold subject to the above terms, I accept such terms as to that cartridge. If you do not accept the terms of this single use license/agreement; return this product in its original packaging to your point of purchase. A replacement cartridge sold without these terms is available at www.lexmark.com.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This Software License Agreement ("License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

- 1 STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY. Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.
- 2 DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE

SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY. This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

- 3 LIMITATION OF REMEDY. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.
 - IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENCE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.
- **4 U.S.A. STATE LAWS**. This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.
- **5 LICENSE GRANT**. Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this License Agreement:
 - **a** Use. You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.
 - **b** Copying. You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.

c Reservation of Rights. The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this License Agreement.

- **d** Freeware. Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the time of download. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.
- **6 TRANSFER**. You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this License Agreement, and any attempt to do so shall be void.
- **7 UPGRADES**. To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.
- **8 LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING.** You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.
- **9 ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE**. This License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.
- 10 TERM. This License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.
- **11 TAXES**. You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.
- **12 LIMITATION ON ACTIONS**. No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.
- **13 APPLICABLE LAW**. This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.
- 14 UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS. The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program is as set forth in this Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).
- 15 CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.

16 EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.

- **17 AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY**. You and Lexmark agree to form this License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "Yes" button on this page or use this product, you acknowledge your agreement to these License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to "sign" a contract with Lexmark.
- **18 CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT**. You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.
- 19 ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, the terms of this License Agreement shall control.
- * Products within the XX90 Series (including but not limited to models Z2390, Z2490, X2690, X3690, and X4690) are not subject to the Cartridge License Agreement. This Cartridge License Agreement does not apply to cartridges included within the printer boxes of XX75 Series products (including but not limited to models X4975 and X7675). It applies to replacement cartridges that are sold subject to these terms and conditions, however. Replacement cartridges sold without these terms are available through www.lexmark.com.

MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES

This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288.

ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED NOTICE

Contains Flash®, Flash® Lite™ and/or Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated

This Product contains Adobe® Flash® player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Reader and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Index

location 10

Numerics	paper capacity 34	cannot delete documents from
2-sided, fax	supported paper sizes 34	print queue 134
setting 83	automatic fax conversion	cannot print over wireless
802.1X	setting 83	network 157
authentication 113	_	cannot print through USB 134
	В	cannot receive faxes 150
Α	background, removing 60	cannot run fax software 151
ad hoc	backing material	cannot scan to computer over a
SSID 102	cleaning 129	network 148
WEP 102	bidirectional communication	cannot send e-mail 148
ad hoc network 120	enabling 160	cannot send faxes 149
ad hoc wireless network	bin extender	card reader light
adding a printer 105	location 11	location 11
- ,	black and white scanning 67	cartridges, ink
creating using Macintosh 102 creating using Windows 102	blocking faxes 95	using genuine Lexmark 13
0 0	broadcast fax, sending	certificate
additional computers	immediately 87	request 113
installing wireless printer 100	buttons, printer control panel	Change [Paper Source] to [Size]
Address Book	Address Book 17	[Type] Paper 135
setting up 86	arrow buttons 16	Change [Paper Source] to [Size]
Address Book, fax	Back 16	Paper 135
setting 83	Black 17	changing default printing mode 52
ADF input tray	Cancel 17	changing page order 40
location 11	Color 17	changing print order 40
ADF press plate	Dial Tone 17	changing Sleep timeout 18
cleaning 129	Home 16	changing wireless settings after
ADF scanner glass	keypad 16	installation (Mac) 102
cleaning 129	Pause 17	changing wireless settings after
adjusting dialing and ringer	Power 16	installation (Windows) 102
volume 92	Redial 17	checking
adjusting speaker volume 92	Select 16	ink levels 127
advanced wireless setup 98	Start 17	checking an unresponsive
AliceBox 101	Start 17	printer 130
aligning the printhead 127	•	checking the dial tone 92
Alignment Problem 135	С	checklist
answering machine	cable	before you troubleshoot 130
best settings for fax 93	installation 118	fax troubleshooting 149
setting up 72	USB 118	memory card troubleshooting 15
appliances	Caller ID pattern, fax	choosing a splitter, faxing 90
wireless network 121	setting 83	cleaning exterior of the printer 128
assigning IP address 126	camera	cleaning printhead nozzles 128
authentication	connecting 47	Close Printer 135
802.1X 113	canceling	Club Internet 101
Auto Answer	copy job 61	coated paper
when to turn on 91	e-mail 71	loading 31
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	print job 54	collating copies 58
clearing a paper jam in 142	scan job 68	Communication not available
loading documents 34	Cannot Collate Job 135	message 160
location 10		IIICSSARC TOO

computer slows down when	reducing an image 57	duplex unit
printing 145	removing background 60	location 11
configuring	tips 56	Duplex Unit Missing 136
fax settings 83, 84	customer support label	
IP address 102	location 11	E
security 112	custom-size paper	EAP 112
configuring e-mail settings 69	printing on 44	EAP-MD5 113
confirmation page, fax 94		EAP-TLS 113
connection	D	EAP-TTLS 113
configurations 123	default printer, setting 52	emission
conserving energy 18	default printing mode	notices 166, 167, 169, 170, 173,
conserving energy, ink, and paper 7	changing 52	174
conserving paper 18	defaults	
contact list	restoring factory defaults 18	energy conserving 7
setting up 86	dial method, fax	_
contact list, e-mail		enlarging an image 57 envelopes
creating 70	setting 83	•
setting up 70	dial tone	loading 31, 42
Continue button unavailable 154	checking 92	printing 42
copier or scanner does not	dial tone volume	error correction, fax
respond 146	adjusting 92	setting 83
copies	dialing prefix 91	error using memory card 154
making 56	Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)	Ethernet 123
copy and scan troubleshooting	fax setup 75	network indicator light 100
cannot scan to computer over a	digital telephone service	Ethernet network
network 148	fax setup 77	information needed for setting up
copier or scanner does not	distinctive ring 91	Ethernet printing 113
	documents	Ethernet port
respond 146	faxing using the computer 88	location 12
partial document or photo	faxing using the control panel 87	Ethernet setup
scans 147	loading into the Automatic	information needed for 113
poor scanned image quality 146	Document Feeder (ADF) 34	exit bin
scan not successful 147	loading on scanner glass 33	location 11
scanning takes too long or freezes	printing 39	EXT port
the computer 147	scanning for editing 65	location 12
copy job	scanning using the printer control	extending the duplex printing dry
canceling 61	panel 63	time 50
copy quality, adjusting 58	scanning using the touch	extending the two-sided printing
copy troubleshooting	screen 62	dry time 37
scanner unit does not close 146	downloading PCL drivers 26	exterior of the printer
copying 56	downloading PS drivers 26	cleaning 128
adding an overlay message 59	downloading Universal Print	e-mail function
adjusting quality 58	Driver 26	setting up 69
collating copies 58	drivers	e-mail troubleshooting
enlarging an image 57	downloading 26	cannot send e-mail 148
ID cards 57	DSL filter 75	e-mailing
making a copy lighter or darker 58	duplex	Address Book 70
multiple page images on one	copying, automatic 60	canceling 71
sheet 59	copying, manual 60	configuring e-mail settings 69
on both sides of the paper 60	faxing 94	scanned documents 66
Pages per Side 59	printing, automatic 48	setting up e-mail function 69
placing separator sheets between	duplex printing dry time	tips 71
copies 59	setting 37, 50	υρ 3 / 1

F	VoIP 76	Freebox 101
	Fax Setup Wizard 84	frequently asked questions
factory default settings	fax troubleshooting	USB cable 118
restoring 18 failed faxes	cannot receive faxes 150	
	cannot run fax software 151	G
retrieving 95	cannot send faxes 149	glossy paper
fax	error messages, printer control	loading 31
confirmation page 94 printer memory 95	panel 152	greeting cards
•	fax troubleshooting checklist 149	loading 32
transmission report 94 fax activity report 94	faxing	Group Dial
fax activity report 94	Address Book 86	setting up 86
setting 83	blocking 95	setting up 80
fax error messages	calling card, using 94	•
Digital Line Detected 153	dial prefix 91	1
Failed To Connect 153	distinctive ring 91	ID cards
Fax Mode Unsupported 152	duplex 94	copying 57
Fax Modem Error 152	fax history 94	improving scan quality 67
No Answer 153	pick up on 91	incorrect language appears on
No Caller ID 153	receiving automatically 89	display 130
Phone Line Busy 153	receiving manually 89	index cards
Phone Line Error 153	rings 91	loading 32
Phone Line is connected to the	scheduling 93	information
incorrect jack on the back of the	sending a broadcast fax	finding 8
machine 152	immediately 87	information needed for setting up
Phone Line Not Connected 153	sending using the control	printer on Ethernet network 113
Remote Fax Error 152	panel 87	information needed for setting up
Unrecoverable Fax Error 152	setup 90	printer on wireless network 97
Unsupported Compression 152	tips, receiving 88	infrastructure network 120
Unsupported Resolution 152	tips, sending 87	ink
fax footer	two-sided 94	conserving 7
setting 83	using the computer 88	ink cartridge access door
fax forwarding 95	using the control panel 87	location 11
fax header	faxing tips	Ink Cartridge Access Door
setting 83	receiving faxes automatically 89	Open 136
fax number 90	FCC notices 166, 170, 173	Ink Cartridge Error 137 ink cartridges
fax quality	file types	replacing 14
setting 93	supported 45	
fax resolution	finding	using genuine Lexmark 13 ink levels
setting 93	information 8	checking 127
fax sending speed	MAC address 124	Ink Low 137
setting 83	print queue 51	inserting a memory card or flash
fax settings	publications 8	drive 46
configuring 83, 84	Web site 8	installation
for answering machine 93	firewall on computer 156	cable 118
for voice mail 93	flash drive	installing
fax setup	inserting 46	network printer 126
country- or region-specific 79	printing documents from 42	installing optional software 25
digital telephone service 77	scanning to 63	installing printer
DSL connection 75	forwarding faxes 95	on wired network
standard telephone line	France	(Macintosh) 113
connection 72	special wireless setup	on wired network (Windows) 113
	instructions 101	11

on wireless network (Macintosh) 99 on wireless network (Windows) 91 installing printer on wired network (Macintosh) 113 installing printer on wired network (Michosh) 113 installing printer on wired network (Windows) 113 installing printer of wireloss 113 index printer Macintosh computer 111 in no wireless 113 in on wireless network 102 instelling 97 networkseurlty 116 network seturp 118 in network 120 installing printer with 1 installing 197 networkosing sharing thes of wireloss 111 in no wireless network 102 noise emission levels 167 nothing happens when memory card in stalling printer on wireless niting 124 notices 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174 notices 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174 notices 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 17			
on wireless network (Windows) 99 installing printer on wired network (Macintosh) 113 installing printer on wired network (Windows) 113 installing printer software 26 installing printer software 27 installing printer software 28 installing printer software 28 installing printer software 28 installing printer software 29 installing printer software 20 installing printer s	on wireless network	loading	network security 116
(Mindows) 99 installing printer on wired network (Macintosh) 113 installing printer on wired network (Windows) 113 installing macinter on wired network installing macinter on wireless inding 124 MAC address 124 finding 125 installing printer on wireless installing macinter on wireless	(Macintosh) 99	documents into the Automatic	network setup page
Installing printer on wired network (Macintosh) 113 installing printer on wired network (Windows) 113 installing printer software 26 installing wireless printer additional computers 100 interference wireless network 121	on wireless network	Document Feeder (ADF) 34	printing 97
Macintosh 113 paper tray 28 various paper types 30 locating macintosh computer 111 sharing the printer with a locating windows computer 111 sharing the printer with a windows computer 111 mo wireless printer additional computers 100 wireless network 121 P address 125 configuring 102 P address of computer finding 125 P address of computer finding 125 P address of printer finding 125 P address, assigning 126 various paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 wischess 124 mothing happens when memory card installing windows computer 111 no wireless network 102 noise emission levels 167 nothing happens when memory card is inserting 124 mothing 125 WAC address 124 finding 124 Macintosh installing printer on wireless network 99 USB 108 wireless 1008 memory card is inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserting 124 memory card is inserting 124 memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserting 124 memory card is inserting 124 memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserting 124 memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 memory card annot be inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 mothing happens when memory card is inserted 154	(Windows) 99	documents on scanner glass 33	networking
installing printer on wired network (Windows) 113 installing printer software 26 installing wireless printer additional computers 100 interference wireless network 121 WPA passphrase 115 WPA passphrase 115 noting happens when memory card is inserted 154 notices 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174 notices 166, 167, 168, 1	installing printer on wired network	envelopes 42	sharing the printer with a
Windows omputer 111 no wireless network 121 WP Apassphrase 115 wireless network 121 P address 125 configuring 102 P address of printer finding 125 P address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 wireless 108 memory card cannot be paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes L L labels loading 32 memory card troubleshooting printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] memory card life featbles of lack and life featbles in the Card Information of the North of the North of the North of the Card Information of the North of the N	(Macintosh) 113	paper tray 28	Macintosh computer 111
installing wirnter software 26 installing wirnters printer additional computers 100 interference wireless network 121 IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 J jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K Key index 126 K Key index 126 K Key index 126 K Key index 126 IL Iabels loading 32 Laper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LEAP 112, 113 LEAP 112, 113 LEAP rint 54 Iline filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] IType] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] IV MAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address 124 finding 125 MAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address filtering 124 Mac address into wireless installing printer on wireless installing pri	installing printer on wired network	various paper types 30	sharing the printer with a
installing wireless printer additional computers 100 interference wireless network 121 IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 Jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 Junk faxes blocking 95 K K K Key index 126 K Key index 126 K In this printer (additional computer finding 125 K Key index 126 K In this printer on wireless network 99 USB 108 memory card in inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card stot location 11 memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory ard is 165, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174 On-hook faxing 94 ordering paper and other supplies 15 Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138 P P page does not print 131 page or ofe copies 59 paper (conserving 7 loading 28, 30) paper and other supplies or dering paper and other supplies or dering pager and other supplies 15 N Remory card stot location 11 memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory ard installing printer on wireless network 99 USB 108 memory card is inserted 154 memory card stot location 11 memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card stot location 11 memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card stot roubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happen		_	•
additional computers 100 interference wireless network 121 IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 IP apper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K Key index 126 IB abels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LeXPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 liveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] WAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address 124 finding 124 MAC address filtering 124 MAC address 124 finding 125 MAC address filtering 124 MAC address 124 finding 125 MAC address filtering 124 MAC address 125 and scale states 124 finding 124 MAC address filtering 124 Macintosh installing printer on wireless network 99 USB 108 memory card inserted 154 memory card annote inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card annot be inserted 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 memory card troubleshooting supplies 15 Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138 P page dees not print 131 page order changing 40 pages per Side copies 59 paper and other supplies ordering aper and other supplies ordering 131 page order changing 40 pages per Side copies 59 paper am in th	- ·		
interference wireless network 121 IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 J jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K K key index 126 K K key index 126 IL labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LEP rint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] IV address filtering 124 MAC address filtering 125 UsB 108 wireless 108 memory card memory card annot be insertled 154 printing 41 paper for specialty media 131 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies or dering paper and other supplies 15 Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper j		•	
wireless network 121 IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 installing printer on wireless network 99 USB 108 wireless 108 memory card inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card droubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 125 labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Ivesbuller 126 Ivacinum filter 146 Indig 124 MAC address 124 MAC address filtering 124 Macintosh Intox (pack addres	•	WPA passphrase 115	
IP address 125 configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 IP address of computer Inding 125 IP address of printer IP address of computer Inding 125 IP address of printer IP address of computer Inding 127 IP address of computer IP address of c			
configuring 102 IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 126 Inserting 40 Inserting 46 Inserting 46 Inserting 46 Inserting 41 Inserting 42 Insertin		M	
IP address of computer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 IP address, assigning 126 Iron-on transfers loading 32 Jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 Junk faxes blocking 95 K Key index 126 L labels loading 32 LEAP 112, 113 LEAP rint 54 Ine filter 75 LINE port local filter in the filter 75 LINE port local filter in the filter 75 LINE port local filter in the filter 126 In the filter 75 Live Dox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] IP address of printer in the ADF 142 Macintosh installing printer on wireless on thework 99 USB 108 memory card inserting 46 printing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 131 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty wedia instelled in the duplex unit 141 paper in Tray [x] Detected 138 paper, rec		MAC address 124	171, 172, 173, 174
finding 125 IP address of printer finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J J		finding 124	-
IP address of printer finding 125 network 99 us 10 installing printer on wireless network 99 us 10 us 10 us 10 us 10 us 10 inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 memory card slot location 11 paper jam in the graph of the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPV2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LevPrint 54 line filter 75 luRe port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Network indicator light 100 network overview 116 network o	•	MAC address filtering 124	0
finding 125 IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32 IP address, assigning 126 IP address,	-	Macintosh	on-hook faxing 94
IP address, assigning 126 iron-on transfers loading 32	•	installing printer on wireless	ordering paper and other
iron-on transfers loading 32 J jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper and in the brinter 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LEXPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port load [Paper Source] with [Size] INTO WIND STAN (SIZE) INTO WIND STAN (SIZE) INTO WIND STAN (SIZE) INTO Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Wireless 108 memory card inserting 46 printing 46 printing 40 page does not print 131 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray (location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 parts diagram 10 page does not print 131 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the DF 142 paper jam in the JP	_	network 99	supplies 15
Inserting 46 printing documents from 42 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K Key index 126 L Iabels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] N memory card inserting 46 printing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper ray [x] Detected 138 paper Tray [x] Detected 138 paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 pritial documents from 42 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper ray [x] Detected 138 paper Tray [x] Detected 138 paper Tray [x] Detected 138 paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 pritial documents or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 page order changing 40 Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 15 paper and other supplies conserving 7 loading 15 paper and other supplies paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam		USB 108	Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138
inserting 46 printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Impaer in in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K R nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPV2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 41 multiple WEP keys 126 N N N N N N N N N N N N N		wireless 108	
jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPV2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 41 multiple WEP keys 126 N N N N N N N N N N N N N	loading 32	memory card	P
pams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] printing documents from 42 scanning to 63 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 moving 141 multiple WEP keys 126 moving 130 LEAP 112, 113 lexPrint 54 line filter 75 location 12 location 12 metwork (x] Software Error 138 network connection with USB 123 metwork indicator light 100 network overview 116 network printer diagram 10 moved 116 metwork printer diagram 10 moved 116 metwork printer diagram 10 moved 116 memory card slot location 12 memory card slot location 12 memory card troubleshooting conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the DF 142 paper j		inserting 46	page does not print 131
jams and misfeeds troubleshooting paper jam in the ADF 142 supported types 45 memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 memory card is inserted 154 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the Daylex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 paper Tray [x] Detected 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 pages per set 146 paper sourcel with [Size]	J	printing documents from 42	
paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] N memory card cannot be inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPV2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 41 multiple WEP keys 126 N N N N N N Pages per Side copies 59 paper conserving 7 loading 28, 30 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper sand type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 paper 30dering 15 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the printer 129 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the DF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the DF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam i		scanning to 63	• •
paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] paper in the duplex unit 141 inserted 154 memory card slot location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 movin			
paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143 junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] loading 143 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper ray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 paper sourced 116		•	
junk faxes blocking 95 K key index 126 L labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] location 24 location 11 memory card troubleshooting checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 paper and other supplies ordering 15 paper default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 paccentarious default settings saving 33 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the			
k key index 126 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the Quplex unit 141 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the printer 129 paper jam in the printer 129 paper jam			loading 28, 30
key index 126 key index 126 Checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Inothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 moving the	-		paper and other supplies
key index 126 Responder 126 Respon	blocking 95	•	ordering 15
key index 126 Card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPv2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] card is inserted 154 Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the ADF 141			paper default settings
Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 MSCHAPv2 113 multiple pages per sheet, printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Memory Device Access Error 138 minimum system requirements 22 moving the printer 129 moving the printer 1341 paper jam in the Abi 142 paper jam in the Abi 142 paper jam in the Abi 142 paper jam in the Abi 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper jam in t	K		saving 33
Isabels Isabel	key index 126		paper jam in the ADF 142
labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Individual of the printer 129 moving the printer 129 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts ldiagram 10 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts ldiagram 10 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts ldiagram 10 paper or specialty media misfeeds 143 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Paper Tr		•	paper jam in the duplex unit 141
labels loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Indication 12 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Indication 13 Indication 14 Indication 15 Indication 16 Indication 17 Indication 18 Indication 19 Indica	L	•	paper jam in the printer 141
loading 32 printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Indication 12 Indication 13 Indication 14 Indication 15 Indication 15 Indication 16 Indication 17 Indication 17 Indication 18 Indication 19 Indication	labels		
printing 43 language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Inditiple pages per sireet, printing 41 multiple WEP keys 126 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 paper size and type setting 36 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 paper, recommended brands types and sizes 35 partial document or photo scans 147 parts diagram 10 password 116	loading 32		
language changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] language multiple WEP keys 126 multiple WEP keys 126 paper tray location 11 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 Paper Tray [x] Removed 138 Paper Tray [x] Paper 138 Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 Paper Tray [x] Det	_		
changing 130 LEAP 112, 113 LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Load [Paper Source] with [Size] LiveBox 106 Load [Paper Source] with [Size]		. •	<u> </u>
LexPrint 54 line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size]	changing 130	multiple WEF Reys 120	
line filter 75 LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size]	LEAP 112, 113	N	
LINE port location 12 LiveBox 101 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] Network [x] Software Error 138 with USB 123 network indicator light 100 network overview 116 network printer diagram 10 password 116	LexPrint 54		
location 12 network connection types and sizes 35 LiveBox 101 with USB 123 partial document or photo Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network indicator light 100 scans 147 [Type] Paper 138 network overview 116 parts Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network printer diagram 10	line filter 75		
LiveBox 101 with USB 123 partial document or photo Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network indicator light 100 scans 147 [Type] Paper 138 network overview 116 parts Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network printer diagram 10	LINE port		• •
Load [Paper Source] with [Size] [Type] Paper 138 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network indicator light 100 network overview 116 network printer network printer diagram 10 installing 136	location 12		
[Type] Paper 138 network overview 116 parts Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network printer diagram 10	LiveBox 101		•
Load [Paper Source] with [Size] network printer diagram 10	Load [Paper Source] with [Size]	_	
Load [raper Source] with [Size]			•
Paper 137 Installing 126 password 116			_
	Paper 137	mstaming 120	ρα ς ΣΜΟΙΟ 110

print job 53 smudges 145 printer problems, basic solutions 130 printer solution 120 printer problems, basic solutions 130 printer solution 140 printer problems, basic solutions 130 printer solutions 130 printer solution 140 printer core in control panel basic solutions 130 printer solution 140 printer core in classification 140 printer core in classification 140 printer does not print memory printer does not print printer does not print memory printer messages printer problems 135 printer does not print memory printer does not pr	nausing	printed page has ink smears or	printer printing blank pages 122
PDF creating from scan 66 PEAP 112, 113 phone book setting up 86 phone plug 79 photo cards loading 32 photo apper loading 31 photo book making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 PICHBridge-enabled camera, connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job coation 11 print grow printer messages loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job coation 12 print order changing 40 print aveue creating 51 print order changing 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Unsupported Cartridge 137 uncoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 streaks or lines on printed inseq 144 Unsupported Cartridge 137 streaks or lines on printed inseq 144 Unsupported Cartridge 135 supported 55 printer satuus dedermining 100 printer satuus determining 100 printe	pausing	printed page has ink smears or	printer printing blank pages 133
creating from scan 66 PEAP 112, 113 Selecting a location 12 Sharing 110 Sahring 110 Sharing in Windows 110 printer Control panel buttons 16 display 16 Duncards Ioading 32 Ethernet indicator 16 Iayout 16 Ioading 32 Ibhoto paper Ioading 31 Iocation 11 Using 16 Wi-Fi indicator 17 Printhead Gannot Move 139 Printhead Fror 139 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printing Collate 40 Custom-size paper 44 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 Ifype Paper 135 Iocation 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 Ink Cartridge Access Door Cancelling 54 Dapusing 53 Ink Cartridge Error 137 Incannot Collate Mo Custom-size paper 44 documents 39 documents 39 documents from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 Ifype Paper 135 Iocation 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 Ink Cartridge Access Door Cancelling 54 Dapusing 53 Ink Cartridge Fror 137 Iresuming 53 Ink Low 137 Print order Changing 40 Ifype Paper 137 Inding 51 Paper 137 Inding 51 Paper 137 Print queue Creating 51 Paper 137 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printing a transmission report 94 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printing a transmission report 94 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printi	• •	_	•
PEAP 112, 113 phone book		•	
phone book setting up 86 sharing in Windows 110 unistalling 26 setting up 86 phone plug 79 printer control panel buttons 16 buttons 16 buttons 16 determining 100 printer status determining 120 printer status loading 32 Ethernet indicator 16 printer, setting as default 52 printers loading 32 location 11 photos using 16 using 16 supported 55 printer does not print grow a memory card or flash drive 47 wireless 156 printer does not respond 133 printegream using 64 printer does not respond 133 printegream using 64 printer does not respond 133 printegream using 64 printer does not respond 133 printegream using 65 collate 40 custom-size paper 44 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents 40 printegream using 65 printing 128 printing 129 printer does not respond 133 printer does not print does not respond 133 printer does not respond 133 printer does not print does not respond 133 printer does not print does not printer does		_	
setting up 86 phone plug 79 phone plug 79 phone splitter 76 photo cards loading 32 photo paper loading 32 photo paper loading 31 photos making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not respond 133 print glass and USB port loading 11 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 point loading 11 print job canceling 54 pausing 53 print troubless of pausing 39 print troubless of thange 139 print try queue creating 51 print try queue creating 51 finding 51 print try queue creating 51 print try queue creating 51 finding 51 print try queue creating 51 print try queue creating 51 finding 51 print try queue creating 51		•	•
phone plug 79 phone splitter 76 photo cards loading 32 photo paper loading 31 photos making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 printed deamon, and printer memory location 11 printed, e-mabled camera, connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print queue creating 51 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue printing 12 came deges 145 slow print speed is slow 145 proor quality at the edges of page 143 print ty queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print ty queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print speed is slow 145 print ty queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print speed is slow 145 print ty queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 print speed is slow 145 print ty queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print speed is slow 145 print speed is slow	·		_
phone splitter 76 photo cards loading 32 photo paper loading 31 photo paper loading 31 photos making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 PictBridge and USB port location 11 porticBridge-enabled camera, connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print type descripting 53 print from loading 32 print syeed is slow 145 print type descripting 40 print type descripting 53 print type descripting 51 print type 134 print type descripting 51 print type 143 print type descripting 51 print type 143 pront queue creating 51 print type 143 pront queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 proor quality at the edges of page 143 print type 143 pront type 143 print type 145 poor quality the the edges of page 143 print type 145 poor quality the the edges of page 143 print type 145 poor quality the the edges of page 143 print type 145 poor quality the the edges of page 145 slow print type 145 slow pri	- '		_
photo cards loading 32		•	•
loading 32 Ethernet indicator 16 ayout 16 ayout 16 bayout 16 ayout			_
photo paper layout 16 location 11 using 16 aligning 127 printhead aligning 127 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not print wireless 156 printhead cannot Move 139 printer does not print wireless 156 printhead cannot Move 139 printer does not print wireless 156 printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 133 printer memory location 11 fax 95 printer memory location 11 fax 95 printer memory printer memory pront quality at the edges of poor quality at the edges of loading 32 paper 135 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] loading 32 Paper 135 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] loading 32 Paper 135 Close Printer 135 location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 lank Cartridge Access Door canceling 54 Open 136 lank Cartridge Access Door canceling 54 Open 136 lank Cartridge Error 137 lank Low 137 print order load [Paper Source] with [Size] changing 40 [Type] Paper 138 load [Paper Source] with [Size] creating 51 Paper 137 lank Low 137 print order load [Paper Source] with [Size] creating 51 Paper 137 lank Low 137 print goed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 Saw printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 limage 144 Uurscoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 lims on printed limage 144 Uurscoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 lims on printed liminge 144 Uurscoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 lims on printed limage 144 Uurscoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 lims and sizes 35 lims an	•	• •	
loading 31 photos making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 PictBridge and USB port location 11 printer does not print printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 133 printer memory location 11 fax 95 printer does not respond 133 printer memory location 11 fax 95 printer does not respond 133 printer memory fax 95 proor quality at the edges of Cannot Collate Job 135 coange 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 print job canceling 32 power supply port location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 print job canceling 54 pausing 53 Ink Cartridge Access Door print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print groud use creating 51 Paper 137 Ink Low 137 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 145 slow print speed 145 slow print spee	_		•
photos making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not print pitting from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 135 Cannot Collate Job 145 Ink Cartridge Access Door Ink Cartridge Fror 137 Ink Low 137 Ink Cartridge Fror 137 Ink L			• •
making borderless copies 57 printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 133 printer memory location 11 fax 95 poor quality at the edges of page 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 portition of location 12 power supply port location 13 portition of location 14 portition of location 15 portition of location 15 print goal of location 16 print goal of location 17 print goal of location 17 print goal of location 18 print goal of location 19	_		•
printing from a memory card or flash drive 47 wireless 156 printher does not print wireless 156 printer does not respond 133 printer does not print quest 145 print great does not print quest 146 print great 145 print gr	•	_	
flash drive 47 scanning for editing 64 printer does not respond 133 printer does not respond 134 printer memory collete 40 custom-size paper 44 documents 39 documents from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera, print gaper 135 poper 136 lake 40 printing 245 paper 135 poper 136 lake 40 printing 246 print gaper 135 poper 136 lake 40 printing 246 printer 35 poper 136 lake 40 printing 247 page 137 print gaper 135 lake 40 printing 248 printing 249			
scanning for editing 64 PictBridge and USB port location 11 fax 95 PictBridge-enabled camera, connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of page 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 Pint job link Cartridge Access Door link Cartridge Error 137 pausing 53 print droder changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of Scanned Document Too Long 139 page 143 print day page 143 print speed is slow shown when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of same and the edges of cannot Collate Job 135 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] (Type] Paper 135 (Trom a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			
PictBridge and USB port location 11 fax 95 cultate 40 PictBridge-enabled camera, printer messages Connecting 47 Alignment Problem 135 documents 39 poor quality at the edges of page 143 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] Change [Paper Source] to [Size] Paper 135 envelopes 42 power supply port power supply port location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 pausing 53 lnk Cartridge Access Door Canceling 54 pausing 53 lnk Cartridge Error 137 on both sides of the paper 48 print order changing 40 print queue Load [Paper Source] with [Size] creating 51 mit order Load [Paper Source] with [Size] creating 51 mit print speed is slow 145 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 Pint speed is on printed image quality 146 First page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printed 138 publications finding 8 Printhead Cannot Move 139 received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands twoes and sizes 35			•
location 11 pfax 95 pritter messages connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of page 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards location 11 print job print job canceling 54 pausing 53 print queue creating 51 finding 51 print queue creating 51 finding 51 print tyoubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 fax 95 printer messages printer messages printer messages printer messages printer messages printer messages callate 40 custom-size paper 44 documents 39 documents 39 documents from a picteridge and proper source lo [Size] for player 135 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] change [Paper Source] to [Size] for player 135 change [Paper Source] to [Size] first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a transmission report 94 printing a transmission report 94 printing a transmission report 94 printing a transmission re			_
PictBridge-enabled camera, connecting 47 Alignment Problem 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 poor quality at the edges of Cannot Collate Job 135 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job location 11 print job canceling 54 pausing 53 resuming 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 finding 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 144 Slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Discarding 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 cannet Porbolem 135 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents from prilash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flabels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flabels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flabels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 138 print ga canfirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 priotocol 125 publications finding 8 received history report 94 received history report 9	- ·	•	
connecting 47 poor quality at the edges of page 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job canceling 54 pausing 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 print queue 135 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Alignment Problem 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 Cannot Collate Job 135 documents 39 documents 39 documents 39 documents from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 protocol 125 publications finding 8 R received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			
poor quality at the edges of page 143 Cannot Collate Job 135 documents from a memory card page 143 (Type) Paper 135 or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 types and sizes 35 for the paper bands types and sizes 35 for the paper bands types and sizes 35 for the paper bands types and sizes 35 for the paper 42 protocol 125 publications finding 8 fin			• •
page 143 poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job canceling 54 pousing 53 resuming 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from printing 145 por quality at the edges of some page 143 print day page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] [Type] Paper 135 Change [Paper Source] to [Size] first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 42 envelopes 42 first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 protocol 125 publications finding 8 R received history report 94 rec		-	
poor scanned image quality 146 postcards loading 32 power supply port location 11 print job canceling 54 pausing 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print typeed is slow 145 print typeed is slow 145 print gueue 134 computer 134 computer 134 computer 134 printing 145 printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print speed 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Ichaper Source] to [Size] first page first 40 from a PictBridge-enabled camera 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printory [138 print troubleshooting			
postcards loading 32			
loading 32 power supply port location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 print job Ink Cartridge Access Door canceling 54 pausing 53 resuming 53 Ink Low 137 locad [Paper Source] with [Size] creating 51 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Paper 135 Close Printer 135 Cancel 136 Cancel 47 labels 43 multiple pages on one sheet 41 network setup page 97 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 print 138 print queue 134 Printhead Cannot Move 138 print queue 134 Printhead Cannot Move 139 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 Short Paper 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Supported 140 Tusupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Tusupported 140			•
power supply port location 11 Duplex Unit Missing 136 Ink Cartridge Access Door Canceling 54 Dopen 136 Dopen 137 Dopen 137 Dopen 138 Dopen 139 Dopen 145 Dopen 140 Dopen 136 Dopen 139 Dopen 144 Dopen 140 Dopen 139 Dopen 140 Dopen 140 Dopen 135 Dopen 140 Dopen 140 Dopen 136 Dopen 147 Dopen 140 Dop	•		
location 11 print job		•	
print job			
canceling 54 pausing 53 resuming 53 resuming 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Open 136 Ink Cartridge Error 137 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 printage 138 printed 138 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Open 136 Ink Cartridge Error 137 on both sides of the paper 48 photos from a memory card or flash drive 47 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 printage 138 printed 238 printed page 138 Scanner Mobre 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 streaks or lines on printed image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 Somanually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			
pausing 53 resuming 53 resuming 53 Ink Low 137 print order Changing 40 print queue Creating 51 finding 51 Paper 137 print troubleshooting Cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Ink Low 137 Ink Cartridge 138 Ink Low 137 Ink Catridge 148 Ink Catridge 148 In Arth 145 In Arth 145 In Bottos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 47 Itips 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 17 Itps 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inphotos from a memory card or flash drive 17 Itps 39 Itwo-sided 48 Inch 140 Inphotos from a memory card or lab 40 Itps 39 Itps 40 Introder 138 Ink Low 137 Itps 40 Inphotos from a		_	
resuming 53 print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 finding 51 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Indicate the decaments or small generated and the streaks or lines on printed image 144 Ioad [Paper Source] with [Size] (Type] Paper 138 place [Paper Source] with [Size] (Type] Paper 138 ptips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 protocol 125 publications finding 8 R R R R R R R R R R R R R		•	
print order changing 40 print queue creating 51 finding 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Load [Paper Source] with [Size] tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing 138 printing a confirmation page 94 printry two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 printing a transmission report 94 printing a transmission report 94 printed 138 printed 138 printed page 139 Scanner ADF Cover 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 streaks or lines on printed image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 tips 39 two-sided 48 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a transmission report 94 printing a confirmation page 94 printing a conf		_	
changing 40 print queue			
print queue	•		
creating 51 Paper 137 Paper 137 finding 51 Memory Device Access Error 138 print speed is slow 145 Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138 print troubleshooting Paper Tray [x] Detected 138 cannot delete documents from print queue 134 Printhead Cannot Move 139 computer slows down when printing 145 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 poor quality at the edges of page 143 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Paper 137 Memory Device Access Error 138 printag 137 Memory Device Access Error 138 printag 138 protocol 125 publications finding 8 R R received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			•
finding 51 print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of samudges 145 slow print speed 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Memory Device Access Error 138 Memory Device Access Error 138 printage 145 Out of Paper in Tray [x] 138 protocol 125 publications finding 8 Protocol 125 publications finding 8 R R Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Streaks or lines on printed image 144 Memory Device Access Error 138 printing a transmission report 94 protocol 125 publications finding 8 R received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			
print speed is slow 145 print troubleshooting cannot delete documents from print queue 134 print queue 134 printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 slow print speed 144 Printed Cannot Move 139 Computer slows down when printhead Error 139 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 image 144 Dusupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 protoccol 125 publications finding 8 received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35	_	•	
print troubleshooting	•	•	
cannot delete documents from print queue 134 Printhead Cannot Move 139 computer slows down when printing 145 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 poor quality at the edges of page 143 Scanned Document Too Long 139 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 Slow print speed 145 Streaks or lines on printed image 144 Printhead Error 139 RR Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Insupported Cartridge 137 Insupported Cartridge 137 Insupported Cartridge 140 Insup	•		•
print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Printhead Cannot Move 139 Printhead Error 139 R Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Printhead Cannot Move 139 R received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35	•		•
printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Printhead Error 139 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 Printhead Error 139 Received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35	cannot delete documents from		finding 8
printing 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 image 144 Replace Ink Cartridge 139 received history report 94 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35			
poor quality at the edges of page 143 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 slow print speed 145 Streaks or lines on printed image 144 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 to streaks or lines on printed USB Device Not Supported 140 to streaks or lines on printed USB Device Not Supported 140 to streaks or lines on printed types and sizes 35	•		R
poor quality at the edges of page 143 Scanned Document Too Long 139 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 slow print speed 145 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Streaks or lines on printed image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 receiving faxes Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35		Replace Ink Cartridge 139	received history report 94
page 143 printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Scanner Disabled 140 Scanner Disabled 140 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 image 144 Scanner ADF Cover Open 139 Auto Answer setting 89 automatically 89 manually 89 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35	poor quality at the edges of		
printed page has ink smears or smudges 145 slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Slow print speed 145 Streaks or lines on printed image 144 Scanner Disabled 140 Short Paper 140 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 tips 89 Trecommended paper brands types and sizes 35		•	_
smudges 145 Short Paper 140 manually 89 slow print speed 145 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 tips 89 streaks or lines on printed Unsupported Cartridge 137 recommended paper brands image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 types and sizes 35			_
slow print speed 145 streaks or lines on printed image 144 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 USB Device Not Supported 140 tips 89 recommended paper brands types and sizes 35	_	•	
streaks or lines on printed Unsupported Cartridge 137 recommended paper brands image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 types and sizes 35			•
image 144 USB Device Not Supported 140 types and sizes 35	•		•
USB Hub Not Supported 140	image 144	• •	
		USB Hub Not Supported 140	••

recycling 7	to a network 63	sharing printer in Windows 110
Lexmark products 15	to a network computer 63	Short Paper 140
WEEE statement 167	using the printer control panel 63	shortcut
redial attempts, fax	using the touch screen 62	creating 20
setting 83	scanning takes too long or freezes	deleting 20
redial time, fax	the computer 147	modifying 20
setting 83	scheduled fax	shortcuts 19, 20
reducing an image 57	sending 93	using shortcuts on printer 21
Replace Ink Cartridge 139	security	shortcuts page
replacing ink cartridges 14	configuring 112	launching 20
reports	wireless network 96	signal strength
fax history 94	security information	finding 120
reports, fax	wireless network 116	Sleep timeout
setting 83	security key 116	changing 18
request	selecting the wireless port 160	software did not install 131
certificate 113	sending a scheduled fax 93	software updates
resetting to factory defaults 18	sending faxes, tips 87	checking 25
resuming	sent history report 94	software, optional
print job 53	setting	finding, installing 25
retrieving failed faxes 95	Auto Answer 91	speaker volume
ringer volume	fax quality 93	adjusting 92
adjusting 92	maximum sending speed 83	splitter, choosing 90
RJ-11 adapter 79	setting the duplex printing dry	SSID
	time 50	ad hoc 102
S	setting the paper size and type 36	finding 122
safety information 6, 72	setting the two-sided printing dry	locating 115
saving energy 18	time 37	wireless network 115
saving paper 18	setting up fax	Standard Network Software
saving paper default settings 33	country- or region-specific 79	Error 140
scan	digital telephone service 77	streaks or lines on printed
improving quality 67	DSL connection 75	image 144
PIN 67	standard telephone line	supported memory cards and file
scan job	connection 72	types 45
canceling 68	VoIP connection 76	supported operating systems 22
scan was not successful 147	setting up printer	supported printers 55
Scanned Document Too Long 139	faxing 90	switching from Ethernet
Scanner ADF Cover Open 139	on wired network	to USB 106
Scanner Disabled 140	(Macintosh) 113	to wireless 106
scanner glass	on wired network (Windows) 113	switching from USB
cleaning 129	on wireless network	to Ethernet 106
location 11	(Macintosh) 99	to wireless 106
scanner unit does not close 146	on wireless network	to wireless, using Mac OS X 108
scanning	(Windows) 99	switching from wireless
creating a PDF from scan 66	setup troubleshooting	to Ethernet 106
documents for editing 65	cannot print through USB 134	to USB 106
documents for e-mailing 66	incorrect language appears on	to USB, using Mac OS X 108
in black and white 67	display 130	<u>_</u>
photos for editing 64	page does not print 131	Т
tips 62	printer does not respond 133	TCP/IP 125
to a flash drive 63	printer printing blank pages 133	technical support 130
to a local computer 62	software did not install 131	telecommunication
to a memory card 63	shared printing 111	notices 170, 171, 172

tips for copying 56 e-mailing 71 printing 39 receiving faxes 88 scanning 62 sending faxes 87 transmission report, fax 94 transmit key WEP 112 transparencies loading 32 tray	troubleshooting, memory card checklist 154 nothing happens when memory card is inserted 154 troubleshooting, print cannot delete documents from print queue 134 computer slows down when printing 145 ink smears or smudges 145 poor quality at the edges of page 143 slow print speed 145	usb 123 cable 118 Macintosh 108 Usb cable 118 definition 118 Usb connection with network connection 123 Usb Device Not Supported 140 Usb Hub Not Supported 140 Usb port location 12 user information, fax setting 83
loading paper 28 troubleshooting checking an unresponsive printer 130 contacting technical support 130 Continue button is unavailable 154 fax checklist 149 solving basic printer problems 130 wireless network 156 troubleshooting, copy scanner unit does not close 146 troubleshooting, copy and scan cannot scan to computer over a network 148 copier or scanner does not respond 146 partial document or photo scans 147 poor scanned image quality 146 scan not successful 147 scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 147 troubleshooting, e-mail cannot send e-mail 148	streaks or lines on printed image 144 troubleshooting, setup cannot print through USB 134 incorrect language appears on display 130 page does not print 131 printer does not respond 133 printer printing blank pages 133 software did not install 131 troubleshooting, wireless cannot print over wireless network 157 changing wireless settings after installation (Mac) 102 changing wireless settings after installation (Windows) 102 resolving communication problems 162 two-sided copying, automatic 60 copying, manual 60 two-sided printing supported paper sizes and paper types 48 two-sided printing dry time	V Virtual Private Network 156 voice mail setting up 72 voice mail, fax settings 93 Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) fax setup 76 VoIP adapter 76 volume, adjusting ringer and dial tone 92 speaker 92 VPN lose connection to printer 156 W Web site finding 8 WEP 96, 112 ad hoc 102 transmit key 112 WEP key key index 126 locating 115 Windows installing printer on wireless
troubleshooting, fax cannot receive faxes 150 cannot run fax software 151 cannot send faxes 149 error messages, printer control panel 152 troubleshooting, jams and misfeeds paper jam in the ADF 142 paper jam in the duplex unit 141 paper jam in the printer 141 paper or specialty media 143	Setting 37, 50 TX report, fax 94 U UK Special wireless setup instructions 101 uninstalling printer software 26 Universal Print Driver downloading 26 Unrecoverable Scan Error 140 Unsupported Cartridge 137 updating printer software 25	network 99 Windows software Abbyy Sprint OCR 22 Phone Book 22 Printer Home 22 Printer Setup Utility 22 Printing Preferences 22 Product Update 22 Status Messenger 22 Status Monitor Center 22 Tools for Office 22 Wireless Setup Utility 22

wired (Ethernet) networking for Macintosh 113 wired (Ethernet) networking for Windows 113 wireless 123 Macintosh 108 network indicator light 100 printer does not print 156 troubleshooting 156 wireless network adding a printer to existing ad hoc network 105 advanced setup 98 common home configurations 116 creating an ad hoc network using Macintosh 102 creating an ad hoc network using Windows 102 information needed for setting up wireless printing 97 installing printer on (Macintosh) 99 installing printer on (Windows) 99 interference 121 resolving communication problems 162 security 96 security information 116 signal strength 120 SSID 115 troubleshooting 156 types of wireless networks 120 wireless network compatibility 96 wireless print server not installed 160 wireless settings changing after installation (Mac) 102 changing after installation (Windows) 102 wireless setup advanced 126 guided 126 information needed for 97 wireless signal strength 120 wireless signal absorption 121 wireless troubleshooting cannot print over wireless network 157

changing wireless settings after installation (Mac) 102 changing wireless settings after installation (Windows) 102 printer and computer on different networks 122 printer works intermittently on wireless network 162 Wi-Fi Protected Setup 106 using 114 Wi-Fi Protected Setup logo identifying 114 WPA 96, 112 WPA passphrase locating 115 WPA2 96 **WPS 106**